

INDIGENOUS BIODIVERSITY OF  
TAURANGA CITY - STATE OF THE  
ENVIRONMENT REPORTING 2008  
- UPDATED 2009 -

SEPTEMBER 2009

Report No. 2300

Prepared for:

TAURANGA CITY COUNCIL  
PRIVATE BAG 12-022  
TAURANGA



WILDLAND CONSULTANTS LTD, 558 MAUNGANUI ROAD, MT. MAUNGANUI, TAURANGA 3116  
Ph 07-574-2642, Fax 07-574 -2643

HEAD OFFICE, 99 SALA STREET, P.O. BOX 7137, TE NGAE, ROTORUA, 3042  
Ph 07-343-9017, Fax 07-343-9018, email [ecology@wildlands.co.nz](mailto:ecology@wildlands.co.nz), [www.wildlands.co.nz](http://www.wildlands.co.nz)





# CONTENTS

1.	INTRODUCTION	1
2.	PROJECT SCOPE	1
3.	METHODS	2
3.1	Review of site category ranking	2
3.2	Review of site category ranking and site boundaries	2
3.3	Vegetation mapping	2
3.4	Indigenous biodiversity indicators	3
3.4.1	Area of indigenous and wetland vegetation removed	3
3.4.2	Habitat fragmentation and isolation	3
3.4.3	Land use and development	5
3.4.4	Area legally protected	5
4.	RESULTS	5
4.1	Review of special ecological site categories	5
4.2	Review of special ecological site boundaries	6
4.3	Addition of 'new' special ecological sites	6
4.4	Vegetation mapping	6
4.5	Indigenous biodiversity indicators	6
4.5.1	Area of indigenous and wetland vegetation removed	6
4.5.2	Habitat fragmentation and isolation	8
4.5.3	Land use and development	12
4.5.4	Area legally protected	13
5.	CONCLUSIONS	14
5.1	Review of special ecological sites boundaries.	14
5.2	Analysis of biodiversity indicators	14
5.2.1	Natural area devegetated	14
5.2.2	Fragmentation and isolation	15
5.2.3	Land use	16
5.2.4	Area legally protected	16
6.	DISCUSSION	16
	ACKNOWLEDGMENTS	21
	REFERENCES	22
	APPENDICES	
1.	Vegetation and habitat classification system	29
2.	Descriptions of vegetation and habitat types within 2009 SES sites	36
3.	Scientific names of species referred to in the text	48
4.	Criteria for the selection of Special Ecological Sites	50

5.	Indigenous biodiversity indicators	52
6.	Abundance and distribution of pests	55
7.	Biodiversity condition and trend	62
8.	Number and distribution of threatened species	64
9.	Location, area, and type of pest and weed control	65
10.	Site photographs	66
11.	Maps	80
12.	SES site descriptions and assessments	109
13.	Definitions of Category 1-4 assessed in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Areas study	188
14.	Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria (indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna)	189

## PROJECT TEAM

s 7(2)(a) - Privacy	- Report author.
s 7(2)(a) - Privacy	- Report review, compilation, and technical advisor.
s 7(2)(a) - Privacy	- GIS mapping and data analysis.
s 7(2)(a) - Privacy	- Report preparation and report review.
s 7(2)(a) - Privacy	- Word processing.

## **Reviewed and approved for release by:**

s 7(2)(a) - Privacy

Wildland Consultants Ltd

Wildland Consultants Ltd

© *Wildland Consultants Ltd 2009*

This report has been produced by Wildland Consultants Ltd for Tauranga City Council. All copyright in this report is the property of Wildland Consultants Ltd and any unauthorised publication, reproduction, or adaptation of this report is a breach of that copyright.

## 1. INTRODUCTION

Section 35 of Resource Management Act (1991) requires territorial authorities to monitor and report on environmental performance. A suite of environmental performance indicators and monitoring protocols were developed in 2000 by the Tauranga City Council (TCC), then the Tauranga District Council (TDC). The extent of Tauranga City is shown in Map 1 (see Appendix 11). In 2000 Wildland Consultants was commissioned by TDC to: (1) develop methods for monitoring these indicators, (2) prepare baseline maps of landforms and vegetation and habitats, and (3) gather data for the indicators (Wildland Consultants 2000a,b,&c). In 2005 these indicators were remeasured and reported in the 2005 State of the Environment (SOE) Report (Wildland Consultants 2005).

This report describes the second remeasurement of some of these indicators. This remeasurement was primarily a mapping exercise undertaken using the 2007/08 aerial photographs. The assessment of indicators in this report has a more limited scope than in previous years, as no data on State indicators have been collected and analysed.

The 2008 Tauranga City State of the Environment report (Wildland Consultants Ltd Contract Report No. 2053) was finalised in October 2008. Subsequent to this, Tauranga City Council requested that the 2008 report be updated to include information on SES 11 and SES 36 that was obtained during a site visit in August 2009. Other changes/expansions to the 2008 report that have been made are as follows:

- Revision of Appendix 2 to match the vegetation/habitats on the SES site maps in Appendix 1.
- A description and assessment of each of the SES sites is provided in Appendix 12.

The maps and information in this report are based on various sources, including aerial photographs, and rapid field inventory work undertaken between 2000 and 2008. Further detailed field assessment of any site is likely to result in refinement of site boundaries, and vegetation and habitat types. The relative status of sites could also change, particularly as sites improve or decline in ecological condition over time, in ways that are often not possible to be detected from an assessment of aerial photographs. The relative significance of the SES sites has not been reassessed for the 2009 revision.

## 2. PROJECT SCOPE

The scope of this project was to:

- Review and update the boundaries of Special Ecological Sites (SES) using the latest (2007/08) aerial photographs.
- Confirm presence and category rankings of existing SES.

- Update inventory of SES to include all sites considered significant in recent survey reports (Wildland Consultants 2005, 2006, 2008).
- Update vegetation boundaries within sites as appropriate.
- Analyse GIS-based biodiversity indicators, as appropriate.

### 3. METHODS

#### 3.1 Review of site category ranking

The rank of each SES was reviewed against the criteria used to identify and categorise the sites in 2000. Map 2 (see Appendix 11) shows the location of all the SES sites. There was potential for the rank of a site to change if it had become degraded (which may result in a site being placed into a 'lower' category), or if a site had been subject to restoration management (which may result in a site being assigned to a 'higher' category). However, changes would have to be significant and/or large scale to result in a rank being changed.

#### 3.2 Review of site category ranking and site boundaries

Changes in the boundaries of each SES were made by two methods.

Firstly, aerial photographs taken in 2007/08 were compared to those taken in 2002/03, which were the basis of mapping in the 2005 SOE Report (Wildland Consultants 2005). Changes in land use were identified as either losses or gains to SESs, and attributed to either real changes ('real') or mapping errors ('artifact') associated with scale of mapping or quality of aerial photographs.

Secondly, SES boundaries were reconciled with those identified in the Tauranga Natural Areas Survey (Wildland Consultants 2008). Significant natural areas identified in the Tauranga Natural Area Survey, but not in the 2005 Tauranga City SOE study, were added to the SES register for 2008 as new sites.

#### 3.3 Vegetation mapping

For changes in vegetation type maps, aerial photographs taken in 2007/08 were visually inspected for the fit of vegetation types mapped in the 2005 SOE report (Wildland Consultants 2005). Changes in vegetation maps were made when vegetation maps obviously no longer lined up with what was present on the ground in the 2007/2008 aerial photographs.

Vegetation and habitat types were mapped and digitised using ArcGIS 9.3 at a scale of 1:1,000 for SES on sand dune landforms, and 1:3,000 elsewhere (see Map 3, Appendix 11 for a map of land forms). Changes were identified visually at these scales and in some cases were digitised at more detailed scales - down to 1:300 - to achieve accurate boundary placement. Vegetation maps are presented in Map 5, Appendix 11.

A five-level classification system was used to describe vegetation types which incorporated hydroclass, structural class, character, dynamics, and descriptors of the vegetation/habitat type. An explanation of the classification system is presented in Appendix 1, and Appendix 2 contains a description of vegetation/habitat types in Tauranga City. The attribute data associated with each vegetation type in the GIS is provided in Table 1. Maps of sites and vegetation types are presented in Appendix 3.

Table 1: Names and definitions of attributes used in the GIS data file. (Source Wildlands 2000 & 2005)

Attribute	Description
Area_ha	The area of the polygon measured in hectares.
Area_sq_metre	The area of the polygon measured in square meters.
Hydroclass	The code number for the hydroclass component of the vegetation habitat group.
Structural class	The code number for the structural class component of the vegetation habitat group.
Character	The code number for the character component of the vegetation habitat group.
Dynamics	The code number for the dynamics component of the vegetation habitat group.
Veg_habitat_group	The code for the vegetation/habitat group, comprising the individual code numbers of each component combined in sequence to provide a five digit number.
Veg_habitat_type_code	The code for the vegetation/habitat type.
Veg_habitat_type_name	The name of the vegetation/habitat type.
Description	Where a polygon consists of a mosaic of one or more vegetation types, a description of the mosaic is provided.
Notes	Notes, if any, relevant to the polygon, e.g. the vegetation has been established from plantings.
Source	Code numbers referring to the source of the information used to delineate and describe the polygon.
Poly_id	A unique number identifying each polygon.

### 3.4 Indigenous biodiversity indicators

#### 3.4.1 Area of indigenous and wetland vegetation removed

The area of indigenous and wetland vegetation removed during the period 2005-2008 was derived from changes to site boundaries, as described above, and calculated using ArcGIS 9.3.

#### 3.4.2 Habitat fragmentation and isolation

Fragmentation is a multifaceted process involving reduction in size of natural areas, changes in their shape, and increases in degree of their isolation. Landscape indices have a descriptive value in comparing spatial patterns within and between landscapes (Rutledge 2003). However, description of the three aspects of fragmented landscapes by a single metric or measure is difficult. The measurement of fragmentation is also dependent upon patch definition and patch scale. In this study, patches were defined as being equivalent to SESs and the resolution of patch boundaries is tied to differences identifiable at a scale of 1:3000. We used a different index to describe

each of the three consequences of fragmentation at a landscape scale - area, shape, isolation - in relation to SESs in Tauranga City, as outlined below:

**Area** - Area of remaining SES is the size (in ha) of sites in raw terms.

**Shape** - Most measures of patch shape focus on some variation of the perimeter-to-area ratio (Krummel *et al.* 1987). Perimeter-to-area ratio is the simplest measure of shape complexity. More complex shapes will have a larger perimeter for a given area and therefore a higher perimeter-to-area ratio. However, the ratio of perimeter-to-area exhibits a negative relationship with size for patches of the same shape (Rutledge 2003). The use of a shape index can correct for this negative relationship by comparing the perimeter-to-area ratio with a standard shape of the same area. We used the Shape Index (SI) of Patton (1975), as described in Rutledge (2003), and standardised raw perimeter: area ratios against the perimeter-to-area ratio of a circle of the same size. The value of SI is equal to 1 when the patch is a circle, and increases without limit as the patch becomes more complex.

The mean perimeter-to-area ratio was calculated using the area and perimeter values. The values of these variables are provided by default for any feature created in a shape file with ArcView on the fields named "SHAPE\_Length" (perimeter) and "SHAPE Area" (area). Once the features (natural site polygons) were finalised, the ratio was calculated for every polygon operating the two fields, and storing the result in a new one. To be finalised, the data base was summarized by site, calculating the mean value of the perimeter-to-area ratio value. The same procedure was followed to calculate the shape index, varying only the equation used to operate both fields.

**Isolation** - To measure isolation we used the Nearest Neighbour index, based on the minimum spanning distance between sites. Minimum spanning distance is the shortest distance between the boundaries of two sites. We also calculated the average minimum spanning distance from each site to all other sites.

The procedure for calculating the minimum spanning distance can be described in three steps:

1. Generate a **distance grid**: This was done using the Euclidean distance output raster which contains the measured distance from every cell to the nearest source (Natural Site). A single distance grid was generated for every single site in order to know the distance of any point inside the city area to a given Natural Site. This was undertaken using the *Euclidean Distance tool* of ArcGIS Spatial Analyst.
2. Calculate **zonal statistics**: This was done using a spreadsheet which contains statistics for each zone defined by a zone dataset (Natural Sites), based on values from another dataset (**distance grid**). A single zonal statistic was generated for every single **distance grid**. It was made using the *Zonal Statistic tool* of ArcGIS Spatial Analyst. This tool calculates several statistics per zone, but the only statistic that was needed was the "minimum", which determines the minimum value of a particular zone.
3. Create an **output matrix**: This was done using a spreadsheet containing a matrix which describes the minimum distance between Natural Sites. Once the

spreadsheet of the required fields was created (one field per Natural Site), each *zonal statistic* spreadsheet was joined automatically, based on the Natural Site Number, in order to populate the created fields by using a batch processing function of the 'Calculate Field tool of ArcGis Data Management'. The fields were populated with the minimum distance value of each zone.

A similar procedure was followed to calculate the distance to built-up areas, although in this case the source of the *distance grid* was the built-up areas, and the final output was a column listing the minimum distance of every single site to a built-up area.

As a general setting for spatial analysis, tools were assigned a mask area based on a 2 km buffer of the Tauranga City Council boundary, and a cell size of 3 meters for the *distance grid*. This means the minimum distance between sites was 3 meters. For the purposes of interpretation we equated this 3 m minimum distance with zero.

### 3.4.3 Land use and development

The minimum spanning distance between each SES boundary and the nearest urban, commercial or industrial area (excluding agricultural buildings/implement sheds, but including carparks and roads) identified in Landcover Database Version 2 (LCDB2), was measured and compared with data from 2005. Distances will decrease if new developments have been established closer to sites than previous developments. However, this measurement does not detect changes in the intensification of an existing development, or changes that have taken place at or beyond the distance of the closest developed site.

### 3.4.4 Area legally protected

The area of legally protected sites was derived from GIS shapefiles supplied by TCC, and expressed as a proportion of the total area of each site (refer to Map 4, Appendix 11). This describes the area legally protected by virtue of land tenure including lands administered by TCC or DoC based upon the TCC land tenure database. It does not include areas protected by virtue of statute or provisions, such as found in district plans or the Resource Management Act (1991).

## 4. RESULTS

This section has not been updated in 2009.

### 4.1 Review of special ecological site categories

On the basis of existing information, the category of only one SES site was changed. Site number 16 (Turret Road) no longer meets the criteria for SES category ranking, and was removed from the 2008 SES schedule. This was primarily due to the clearance of this site during the period 2005-2008.

## 4.2 Review of special ecological site boundaries

As a result of vegetation and habitat mapping, the boundaries of 31 SESs were revised (Table 2). The individual size of ten SESs, including four Category 1 sites (SES 1, 3, 5, and 9), have reduced as a consequence of habitat destruction. The total area lost was 9.2 ha. One Category 2 SES (35) increased in size as a consequence of habitat restoration work carried out over approximately 3 ha.

Boundary adjustments arising from revisions detected on higher quality aerial photographs than those available in 2005 occurred at 23 sites. Many of the revisions made to the vegetation maps prepared in 2005 are relatively minor in nature and are artefacts or corrections. In general, artefacts were identified because the mapping of vegetation in 2005 was undertaken at a scale we consider too great to effect accurate boundary location in some instances. The 2007/2008 aerial photographs are of higher quality than the photographs that were available to prepare the vegetation and habitat maps in 2005. Updated vegetation maps are presented in Appendix 3.

An increase of 12.38 ha to mangrove loamfield and shrubland has occurred around the harbour, and a gain of 10.09 ha to spinifex-pingao/*Calystegia soldanella* grassland has occurred on sand dunes along the oceanic coast. Eight hectares of artefact changes (i.e. changes to the GIS layer that were not real changes on the ground) were not individually accounted for when site boundaries associated with sand dune sites were updated.

## 4.3 Addition of 'new' special ecological sites

Seven new Special Ecological Sites were added to the register from sites identified within the Tauranga Natural Areas Survey (Wildland Consultants 2008). Six of the seven SES added to the 2008 register were ranked as Category 2 SES, on the basis of information presented in the Tauranga Natural Area Survey. One SES, Elizabeth Wetland, was ranked as a Category 1 SES.

## 4.4 Vegetation mapping

We mapped 838.7 ha of vegetation within 36 SES in Tauranga City (refer to Appendix 4). Almost one third of the total area mapped is made up of only two vegetation/habitat types: pohuehue vineland and grey willow forest. As in 2005, the most widespread vegetation class mapped in Tauranga City was vineland, reflecting the relative abundance of pohuehue vineland along the oceanic coast.

## 4.5 Indigenous biodiversity indicators

### 4.5.1 Area of indigenous and wetland vegetation removed

Between 2005 and 2008 9.20 ha of indigenous or wetland vegetation was removed from SESs (Table 2). The vegetation type that sustained the greatest loss was grey willow forest, of which 5.21 ha was removed from wetlands in Kopurererua Stream and Wairoa River. One quarter of the area of the Kopurererua Wetland has been cleared since 2000. Despite this loss, Kopurererua Wetland remains the third largest

SES within Tauranga City. One SES site (Turret Road - 0.4 ha) has been cleared completely.

Table 2: Special Ecological Sites in Tauranga City where site boundaries changed over the period 2005-2008 as a result of habitat destruction or gain, or adjustments were made as a consequence of higher quality aerial photographs.

SES Name	Type of Change						Grand Total
	Gain			Loss			
	Actual	Artifact	Total	Actual	Artifact	Total	
Hopukioire		0.53	0.53				0.53
Kaitemako Stream Mouth		0.05	0.05	0.41	1.10	1.51	-1.46
Kaituna Sand Dunes and Wetland	0.09		0.09				0.09
Kopurererua Stream Wetland		0.06	0.06	5.21	0.21	5.42	-5.36
Mangatawa					0.09	0.09	-0.09
Matua Estuary-Yorke Park	1.06	0.24	1.30		0.70	0.70	0.60
Mauao 1	0.23	0.25	0.48		0.17	0.17	0.31
Mauao 2	0.26	0.04	0.30		0.02	0.02	0.28
Motuopae Island					0.08	0.08	-0.08
Motuotau Island		0.24	0.24				0.24
Ngapeke Road		0.64	0.64		0.05	0.05	0.59
Orumatua		0.02	0.02		0.11	0.11	-0.10
Otira Sand Dunes	1.84		1.84	1.45	0.03	1.48	0.36
Papamoia Sand Dunes	2.12		2.12				2.12
Poike		0.16	0.16	0.56		0.56	-0.40
Rangataua Bay	0.27	1.03	1.30		0.57	0.57	0.73
Ranginui Road		0.35	0.35				0.35
Shark Alley to Kaituna Spit Sand Dunes	7.48		7.48	0.86		0.86	6.62
Turret Road				0.40		0.40	-0.40
Waikareao Estuary 1		0.02	0.02	0.13	3.89	4.01	-3.99
Waikareao Estuary 2	0.33	0.27	0.61	0.04		0.04	0.57
Waimapu Estuary	7.20		7.20				7.20
Waimapu Estuary Walkway	0.72		0.72				0.72
Waipu Bay 1	1.04	0.04	1.08	0.11		0.11	0.97
Waipu Bay 2	0.63		0.63				0.63
Waipu Bay 3		0.36	0.36		0.04	0.04	0.32
Waipu Bay 4		0.95	0.95				0.95
Waipu Bay 5		0.84	0.84				0.84
Wairoa River		0.77	0.77	0.02	0.21	0.23	0.54
Waitao Stream	1.14	0.10	1.24				1.24
Welcome Bay					0.26	0.26	-0.26
<b>Grand Total</b>	<b>24.41</b>	<b>6.96</b>	<b>31.36</b>	<b>9.20</b>	<b>7.53</b>	<b>16.72</b>	<b>14.64</b>

#### 4.5.2 Habitat fragmentation and isolation

Fragmentation indices for all SES - including perimeter-to-area ratios, shape indices, and minimum and average distances to other SES - are provided in Tables 3 and 4 below for 2005 and 2008 respectively.

##### **All Sites in 2008 (Total 43)**

**Area** - The area of SES in 2008 ranges from 0.2 ha to 69.2 ha, with the average across all sites being 20.3 ha (Table 3).

**Shape** - The 2008 shape indices range from 1.2 to 7.0, with the average across all sites being 2.2.

**Isolation** - The minimum distance to the nearest SES ranges from 0 to 898 m, with the average across all SES sites being 178 meters.

##### **All Sites in 2005 (Total 38)**

**Area** - The area of SES in 2005 ranges from 0.2 ha to 66.6 ha, with the average across all sites being 20.9 ha (Table 4).

**Shape** - The 2005 shape indices range from 1.3 to 7.6, with the average across all sites being 2.7.

**Isolation** - The minimum distance to nearest ranges from 0 to 634 m, with the average across all sites being 172.1 meters.

##### **Comparison of 2005 Sites (38) in 2008**

**Area** - The average area of the 38 SES identified in the 2005 SOE Report has increased from 20.9 to 23.2 ha.

**Shape** - The average shape index decreased from 2.7 to 2.3, indicating that, on average, sites have become more round than they were in 2005.

**Isolation** - The average minimum spanning distance to nearest neighbours has decreased from 172.1 to 153.7 meters.

The shape index decreased for 21 sites, increased for 12 sites, and stayed constant for five sites over this period. This has resulted in a distribution of changes which, with the exception of two outliers, is slightly left-skewed in favour of a reduction in shape indices (Figure 1).

Change in Shape Index 2005-2008

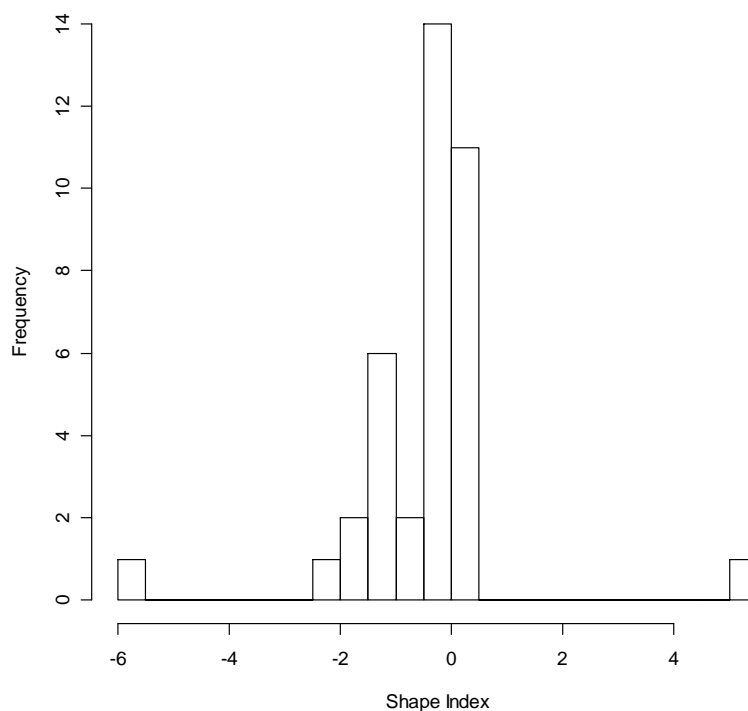


Figure 1: Distribution of changes in Shape index for the 38 sites shared between the 2005 and 2008 SES schedules, Tauranga City. Changes in the negative direction indicate that sites are becoming more rounded.

Waimapu Estuary and Waimapu Walkway have had their minimum spanning distances reduced by 120 and 166 meters respectively as a result of mangrove growth and consequent revision of site boundaries. Four other estuarine sites also contribute to the decrease in average minimum spanning distance. The minimum spanning distance for 30 sites was unchanged between 2005 and 2008.

Table 3: Fragmentation indices for SES in Tauranga City, 2005.

SES Name	Area (A) - ha	Perimeter (P) - m	MEAN_P/A Ratio	MEAN Shape Index	Minimum Distance to Nearest	Average Distance to Nearest
Wairoa River	38.06	9,166	0.171	2.54	181	8,943
Matua Estuary-Yorke Park	49.41	9,621	0.061	2.26	181	7,483
Waikareao Estuary 1	43.10	4,141	0.010	1.77	3	6,094
Waimapu Estuary	46.24	6,455	0.014	2.66	127	6,384
Poike	31.19	6,227	0.024	2.32	127	6,532
Waitao Stream	43.65	6,296	0.098	1.83	298	5,631
Mauao 1	43.00	3,815	0.009	1.63	9	8,133
Motuotau Island	2.14	675	0.032	1.29	634	8,116
Otira Sand Dunes	57.35	9,210	0.016	3.41	3	5,992
Papamoa Sand Dunes	60.51	8,757	0.051	2.18	4	8,287

SES Name	Area (A) - ha	Perimeter (P) - m	MEAN P/A Ratio	MEAN Shape Index	Minimum Distance to Nearest	Average Distance to Nearest
Kaituna Sand Dunes and Wetland	53.22	10,533	0.020	4.04	3	13,393
Motuopae Island	2.23	1,049	0.047	1.97	202	6,197
Waikareao Estuary 2	15.50	4,886	0.032	3.48	3	5,922
Kopurererua Stream Wetland	65.14	12,165	0.019	4.22	541	6,266
Waimapu Estuary Walkway	2.27	2,268	0.158	1.85	173	5,811
Turret Road	0.40	346	0.087	1.54	399	5,683
Waimapu Stream Wetland	0.22	219	0.101	1.31	187	7,687
Hairini	2.08	1,590	0.085	1.84	475	5,967
Kaitemako Stream Mouth	18.03	4,221	0.023	2.78	197	5,425
Welcome Bay	15.83	4,856	0.031	2.44	197	5,748
Tye Park Inlet	2.43	1,060	0.044	1.90	406	5,801
Ranginui Road	1.54	710	0.046	1.60	406	5,578
Ngapeke Road	20.14	6,179	0.031	3.86	298	5,267
Mangatawa	8.38	2,671	0.088	1.37	341	5,740
Rangataua Bay	66.64	9,036	0.014	3.10	163	4,614
Orumatua	5.49	4,098	0.075	4.90	163	4,622
Waipu Bay 1	18.87	4,121	0.022	2.66	66	4,738
Waipu Bay 2	1.38	1,110	0.081	2.65	66	4,990
Waipu Bay 3	1.24	1,390	0.113	3.50	195	4,983
Waipu Bay 4	3.42	1,431	0.042	2.17	3	5,325
Waipu Bay 5	13.88	3,932	0.065	1.96	3	5,123
Mauao 2	4.33	4,213	0.224	1.78	9	7,979
Moturiki Island	2.78	975	0.035	1.64	105	8,077
Hopukioire	1.56	1,225	0.154	2.11	79	7,838
Shark Alley to Kaituna Spit Sand Dunes	39.92	17,406	0.044	7.71	3	5,139
Kaituna River Wetlands	20.59	4,540	0.026	1.46	453	15,468
Shark Alley to Kaituna Spit Sand Dunes 1	4.28	2,759	0.064	3.73	3	8,124
Shark Alley to Kaituna Spit Sand Dunes 2	5.73	6,499	0.113	7.60	3	11,232
Shark Alley to Kaituna Spit Sand Dunes 3	3.75	1,267	0.042	1.36	3	16,174
<b>Average</b>	<b>20.92</b>	<b>4,644.04</b>	<b>0.06</b>	<b>2.68</b>	<b>172.10</b>	<b>7,089.86</b>

Table 4: Fragmentation indices for SES in Tauranga City, 2008.

SES Name	Area (A) - ha	Perimeter (P) - m	MEAN P/A Ratio	MEAN Shape Index	Minimum Distance to Nearest SES	Average Distance to All SES
Wairoa River	38.78	9,391	0.160	2.66	181	9,920
Matua Estuary-Yorke Park	50.41	8,932	0.058	2.13	181	8,429
Waikareao Estuary 1	39.61	4,562	0.012	2.03	3	6,976
Waimapu Estuary	51.78	6,701	0.013	2.61	7	7,186
Poike	30.79	6,413	0.024	2.38	127	7,314
Waitao Stream	51.18	7,878	0.083	2.14	298	6,048
Mauao 1	43.31	3,787	0.009	1.61	9	8,943
Motuotau Island	2.38	671	0.028	1.22	634	8,836
Otira Sand Dunes	57.61	9,258	0.018	2.37	3	6,223
Papamoa Sand Dunes	63.01	8,952	0.051	2.18	4	8,132
Kaituna Sand Dunes and Wetlands	69.24	20,072	0.077	2.78	3	12,529
Motuopae Island	2.16	1,040	0.048	1.98	195	7,058
Waikareao Estuary 2	16.07	5,363	0.046	2.07	3	6,798
Kopurererua Stream Wetland	62.05	11,259	0.032	1.85	541	7,150
Waimapu Estuary Walkway	6.59	3,592	0.141	1.89	7	6,617
Waimapu Stream Wetland	0.22	219	0.101	1.31	187	8,487
Hairini	2.08	1,590	0.085	1.84	475	6,728
Kaitemako Stream Mouth	16.62	4,179	0.120	1.42	197	6,162
Welcome Bay	25.45	6,628	0.025	2.51	197	6,402
Tye Park Inlet	2.43	1,060	0.044	1.90	406	6,409
Ranginui Road	1.89	758	0.040	1.55	406	6,171
Ngapeke Road	20.74	6,449	0.038	2.81	298	5,802
Mangatawa	8.29	2,729	0.088	1.39	341	6,176
Rangataua Bay	67.37	8,892	0.075	1.70	163	5,144
Orumatua	5.39	4,112	0.076	4.96	163	5,252
Waipu Bay 1	19.92	4,029	0.085	1.85	39	5,384
Waipu Bay 2	2.01	1,191	0.059	2.36	39	5,618
Waipu Bay 3	1.55	1,627	0.175	1.64	195	5,597
Waipu Bay 4	4.37	1,699	0.262	1.77	3	5,923
Waipu Bay 5	14.72	4,205	0.175	1.70	3	5,735
Mauao 2	4.61	4,507	0.242	1.73	9	8,777
Moturiki Island	2.78	975	0.035	1.64	75	8,847
Hopukiore	2.10	1,210	0.058	2.34	66	8,612
Shark Alley to Kaituna Spit Sand Dunes	45.61	19,935	0.211	1.86	3	5,630
Kaituna River Wetlands	30.78	6,933	0.026	1.77	371	14,366
Elizabeth Wetland	3.18	1,418	0.091	1.63	339	14,293
Bell Road Oxbow	3.12	1,801	0.062	1.95	898	13,267
Kaituna River Mouth	1.03	546	0.053	1.51	50	17,706
Motuopuhi Island	1.23	608	0.049	1.53	412	6,439
Waipu Bay 6	1.11	457	0.041	1.21	99	6,095
Waipu Bay 7	1.63	740	0.045	1.62	193	5,852
Shark Alley to Kaituna Spit Sand Dunes 1	4.39	3,015	0.069	2.20	3	8,207
Shark Alley to Kaituna Spit Sand Dunes 2	6.57	6,446	0.098	7.04	3	10,759
Shark Alley to Kaituna Spit Sand Dunes 3	6.54	6,182	0.095	6.77	3	15,238
<b>Average</b>	<b>20.29</b>	<b>4,818.40</b>	<b>0.08</b>	<b>2.21</b>	<b>178.00</b>	<b>8,028.8</b>

#### 4.5.3 Land use and development

Average minimum spanning distance between each SES and the nearest suburban, residential or industrial areas is 259.5 meters in 2008, based on landcover information derived from LCDB2 is presented in Table 5. In 2005, the average minimum spanning distance to residential and industrial areas, on the basis of data from LCDB2, was 105.8 meters.

Table 5: Minimum spanning distance between each SES in Tauranga City and nearest suburban, residential, or industrial area, for 2005 and 2008.

SES Name	2005 Distance (m)	2008 Distance (m)
Wairoa River	97	97
Matua Estuary-Yorke Park	0	0
Waikareao Estuary 1	0	0
Waimapu Estuary	0	0
Poike	0	0
Waitao Stream	364	333
Mauao 1	103	98
Motuotau Island	739	733
Otira Sand Dunes	0	0
Papamoia Sand Dunes	0	0
Kaituna Sand Dunes and Wetlands	0	0
Motuopae Island	398	398
Waikareao Estuary 2	0	0
Kopurererua Stream Wetland	0	0
Waimapu Estuary Walkway	0	0
Turret Road	0	N/A
Waimapu Stream Wetland	101	101
Hairini	0	0
Kaitemako Stream Mouth	0	0
Welcome Bay	0	0
Tye Park Inlet	0	0
Ranginui Road	236	236
Ngapeke Road	41	41
Mangatawa	288	289
Rangataua Bay	0	0
Orumatua	517	517
Waipu Bay 1	39	34
Waipu Bay 2	73	73
Waipu Bay 3	8	8
Waipu Bay 4	514	514
Waipu Bay 5	567	567
Mauao 2	15	15
Moturiki Island	169	169
Hopukioere	0	0
Shark Alley to Kaituna Spit Sand Dunes	0	0
Kaituna River Wetlands	891	697
Elizabeth Wetland	N/A	2,136
Bell Road Oxbow	N/A	1,759
Kaituna River Mouth	N/A	625
Motuopuhi Island	N/A	117
Waipu Bay 6	N/A	676
Waipu Bay 7	N/A	303

SES Name	2005 Distance (m)	2008 Distance (m)
Shark Alley to Kaituna Spit Sand Dunes 1	0	0
Shark Alley to Kaituna Spit Sand Dunes 2	0	0
Shark Alley to Kaituna Spit Sand Dunes 3	1,027	881
<b>Average</b>	<b>159</b>	<b>153</b>

#### 4.5.4 Area legally protected

SESs cover 892.65 ha, of which 349.25 ha or 39% is legally protected by land tenure or covenant. Types of protection include DOC reserves and TCC reserves.

Seventeen sites have virtually no legal protection, except as specified under district plans and provisions within the RMA (see Table 6).

Table 6: Areas and percentage of SES areas in Tauranga City with legal protection in 2008.

Site Name	Site Number	Area	Legally Protected Area	Percent Legally Protected
Wairoa River	1	38.78	0.00	0.00
Matua Estuary-Yorke Park	2	50.41	26.72	53.01
Waikareao Estuary 1	3	39.61	18.82	47.53
Waimapu Estuary	4	51.78	18.20	35.14
Poike	5	30.79	4.13	13.41
Waitao Stream	6	51.18	0.51	0.99
Mauao 1	7	43.31	41.85	96.63
Motuotau Island	8	2.38	0.00	0.00
Otira Sand Dunes	9	57.61	39.77	69.03
Papamoa Sand Dunes	10	63.01	62.80	99.66
Kaituna Sand Dunes and Wetlands	11	69.24	0.20	0.28
Motuopae Island	12	2.16	0.00	0.00
Waikareao Estuary 2	13	16.07	3.02	18.80
Kopurererua Stream Wetland	14	62.05	46.70	75.25
Waimapu Estuary Walkway	15	6.59	2.84	43.10
Waimapu Stream Wetland	17	0.22	0.00	0.00
Hairini	18	2.08	0.85	40.98
Kaitemako Stream Mouth	19	16.62	4.52	27.20
Welcome Bay	20	25.45	16.03	62.97
Tye Park Inlet	21	2.43	0.10	3.94
Ranginui Road	22	1.89	0.00	0.00
Ngapeke Road	23	20.74	0.94	1.46
Mangatawa	24	8.29	0.00	0.00
Rangataua Bay	25	67.37	1.00	0.66
Orumatua	26	5.39	0.00	0.00
Waipu Bay 1	27	19.92	0.65	3.27
Waipu Bay 2	28	2.01	0.00	0.00
Waipu Bay 3	29	1.55	0.36	23.19
Waipu Bay 4	30	4.37	0.00	0.00
Waipu Bay 5	31	14.72	0.00	0.00
Mauao 2	32	4.61	4.13	89.64
Moturiki Island	33	2.78	0.00	0.00
Hopukioire	34	2.10	2.04	97.57
Shark Alley to Kaituna Spit Sand Dunes	35	63.11	50.27	79.65

Site Name	Site Number	Area	Legally Protected Area	Percent Legally Protected
Kaituna River Wetlands	36	30.78	0.00	0.00
Elizabeth Wetland	37	3.18	0.00	0.00
Bell Road Oxbow	38	3.12	1.74	0.01
Kaituna River Mouth	39	1.03	0.00	0.00
Motuopuhi Island	40	1.23	1.08	87.49
Waipu Bay 6	41	1.11	0.00	0.00
Waipu Bay 7	42	1.63	0.00	0.00
<b>Totals</b>		892.65	349.2543	

## 5. CONCLUSIONS

This section was not updated in 2009.

### 5.1 Review of special ecological sites boundaries

An increase of 12.38 ha of mangrove loamfield and shrubland around the harbour has occurred through the natural spread of mangroves onto substrate formed by the relatively recent deposition of sediment. This spread represents a transformation of one kind of natural area into another, in this case inter-tidal flats have been colonised by mangroves. However, this change has not resulted in a net gain in the area of indigenous habitats within the harbour.

An increase of 10.09 ha to spinifex-pingao/*Calystegia soladanella* grassland has occurred on sand dunes along the oceanic coast. Approximately 3 ha of this gain can be attributed to restoration activities along Mt. Maunganui Beach. The remainder of this gain is a component of natural dune dynamics. Severe storm events erode incipient and established foredunes, and reduce the vegetative cover along sand dune coasts. Recolonisation of beach sand by dune plants between severe and erosive storm events increases the vegetative cover of dune systems. The increase in the area of SES on sand dunes observed in 2008, as compared with 2005, reflects the capacity of these dune systems to express intrinsic cyclical fluctuations in the area of occupancy by dune vegetation. This process has been significantly enhanced - in Tauranga City - by the many community-based restoration and planting projects along the Mt Maunganui-Papamoa coast.

### 5.2 Analysis of biodiversity indicators

#### 5.2.1 Natural area devegetated

Between 2005 and 2008, 9.2 ha of indigenous terrestrial and wetland vegetation was cleared within SESs. The largest single area lost was 5.21 ha of the Kopurererua Wetland. Tenure of all cleared land is a combination of TCC road reserve and TCC reserve. The area cleared is greater than the total area of the ten smallest SES combined. In numerical terms, most losses are small reductions due to urban encroachment into SES sites, as a result of either new housing developments or the extension of existing gardens.

This loss, considered in combination with the removal of 59 ha of indigenous or wetland vegetation during the preceding three year interval - a total loss of 68.2 ha in six years - is equivalent to a loss rate of 13.5% per decade. At this rate, the area of indigenous habitats within Tauranga City will halve in 50 years.

To some extent, the losses in some SES have been mitigated by the expansion of other SES. However, the areas removed are not the same character as the areas gained. Of the 841.05 ha of SES present in 2000, only 773 ha remain in 2008.

Piecemeal reductions in the areas of SESs have been offset by growth and spread of mangrove communities onto mudflats, and re-establishment of dune communities on reformed incipient foredunes. Both of these processes are natural components of estuarine and dune dynamics, respectively. This offset in area does not represent an offset in biodiversity values, when freshwater wetland communities - a nationally uncommon vegetation type - are substituted by mangrove-dominated communities within the total area encompassed by SESs. Neither is the increment in the area of sand dunes reflective of an actual gain to the area over which natural coastal processes operate, although the community-based Coastcare projects are obviously having a very positive effect.

SES site boundaries identified in this study are tied to boundaries of vegetation types. As these fluctuate along the oceanic coastal margin, so does site area. Some sites do not have the capacity to recover areas lost in one area through expansion in another, such as the Kopurererua Wetland. An assessment of this indicator must include the landscape context within which the raw values are couched, because the raw numbers - particularly total SES area in each year - do not necessarily or accurately indicate real changes.

### 5.2.2 Fragmentation and isolation

Differences in average sizes, shape indices, and isolation indices for all sites in 2008 are, in part, the result of five additional sites being included in the 2008 analysis. Specifically, the average size across all sites has decreased, the average fragmentation index has decreased, and the average minimum spanning distance has increased. When 2008 averages are calculated for these indices for the 38 sites identified in 2005, different trends are apparent. The average site size has increased, the average shape index has decreased, and the average minimum spanning distance has decreased. This downward trend may be attributable to growth of mangrove areas, expansion of dune communities, revised site boundaries, and removal of narrow fingers of vegetation. The 14 ha increase in mapped SES boundaries between 2005 and 2008 is linked to a decrease in the average shape indices over the same period.

The decrease in average minimum spanning distance has been driven primarily by two adjacent estuarine sites - Waimapu Estuary and Waimapu Walkway - which have had their minimum spanning distances reduced by 120 and 166 meters respectively as a result of mangrove growth and revision of site boundaries. Four other estuarine sites also contribute to the decrease in average minimum spanning distance. The minimum spanning distance for 30 sites is unchanged between 2005 and 2008.

As sites become smaller, distances between sites (as a function of increasing minimum spanning distance), and area-to-perimeter ratios both increase. All three factors are components of and contribute to indices of fragmentation. Restoration activities associated with sites may not alter minimum spanning distances between sites but may consolidate site boundaries. This will reduce the degree to which the actual sites are fragmented. Restoration activities between sites may reduce minimum spanning distances between sites, which also reduces fragmentation.

Standards need to be developed to ensure that the inclusion of potential restoration sites (PRS) into the calculation of these three indices reflects the habitat quality, and by extrapolation, the functional connectivity of those PRSs. When areas that are currently identified as “potential restoration areas” meet SES criteria, their status should be upgraded to SES, either as being established as new SES or as additions to existing SES (see Map 3, Appendix 11 for a map of existing and potential restoration sites).

### 5.2.3 Land use

Comparison of the recalculated distances between SES and nearest urban, suburban or industrial areas for 2005 with distances calculated for 2008 shows a small decrease in the average distance for those sites common to both years.

### 5.2.4 Area legally protected

Most of the 349 ha of protected areas are concentrated in the larger sites, including Kopurererua Stream Wetland, Mauao 1, Otira Sand Dunes, Papamoa Sand Dunes, and Shark Alley to Kaituna Spit Sand Dunes. Seventeen of the smaller SES have little or no legal protection. In 2005, the area with legal protection was also reported as being 39% (Wildland Consultants 2005). The proportion of SES area that is legally protected has not changed in the three year period between 2005 and 2008. This can be interpreted as a positive indicator, as the area encompassed by SES has increased from 810 ha to 892 ha over the same period, in part through the addition of several sites to the SES schedule.

## 6. DISCUSSION

### Legislative Framework

Remeasurements of pressure and response indicators in this report were made on the basis of high resolution (pixel size 25 cm) aerial photographs. Up-to-date GIS data layers for land tenure and legal protection status were also available for the 2008 analysis and reporting. This facilitated remote assessment of indicators measuring the degree of direct human impact at each site, and the indicators presented in this 2008 report are focussed on the monitoring of human-induced impacts.

In 2003, functions of regional councils were amended within the Resource Management Act by inclusion of the following statements:

- Section 30(1)(c) of the principal Act is amended by inserting, after subparagraph (iii), the following subparagraph:
  - "(iiiia) the maintenance and enhancement of ecosystems in water bodies and coastal water."
- Section 30(1) of the principal Act is amended by inserting, after paragraph (g), the following paragraph:
  - "(ga) the establishment, implementation, and review of objectives, policies, and methods for maintaining indigenous biological diversity:".

This means that Environment Bay of Plenty (as well as the Department of Conservation) now also has roles relating to indigenous biodiversity within Tauranga City.

### Ongoing Change

Even if all direct human impact on sites is ameliorated, mitigated, or reduced completely, biodiversity decline will continue. The ecological reality of contemporary New Zealand landscapes is that biodiversity decline and ecological degradation are multi-faceted processes. People have been major components of this process (Craig *et al.* 2000), but are no longer the primary ongoing causal agent (at least in the short term). Within a statutory framework, three landscape scale 'home truths' must be acknowledged if the objectives set out in Paragraph (ga) above are to be achieved. Firstly, ongoing impacts of invasive species continue on a day-to-day basis. Secondly, the impacts of invasive species increase from local, to regional to national scales as they spread throughout the country, up to the limits of their environmental tolerance. Thirdly, the suite of invasive species present in New Zealand continues to increase as new species arrive and others emerge and are recognised as invasive. There is already recognition of this ecological reality within the District Plan:

- *"Maintenance and enhancement of the natural character of the coastal environment, rivers, stream and wetlands."*
- *"The sustainable management of ecosystem processes and remaining indigenous vegetation, species and habitat resources."*

### Snapshot in Time

State of the Environment Reporting aims to capture a snapshot of the condition of natural areas at the time of reporting. This project focuses on capturing that snapshot of state in a pragmatic and cost-effective fashion, following the methods presented in Wildland Consultants (2000b, 2005). It emphasizes some modifications to indicators that will hopefully improve the assessment of 'state'. The need for indicators capable of informing on the success of management actions that may be applied in the future with a view to improving biodiversity condition is also stressed, and options for this are explored further below.

## Community Perceptions

A Community Outcomes Survey (EBOP 2006) was undertaken to assess perceptions of the community regarding the effectiveness of the outcome in the Tauranga District Plan. Most respondents expressed a “*high level of satisfaction expressed by the community with the District landscape*”, and believed that the landscape is the same or better than two years before. Seventy-nine percent rated the natural environment as good or very good. The impressions of respondents are not necessarily reflective of trends observed within SES over the period 2000-2005, when “biodiversity indices” trended downward for eight of eleven Category 1 Special Ecological Sites. This suggests that general impressions, while valuable for assessing satisfaction with city environs, should not be used as proxy indicators of the state of the environment.

## Options for a More Quantitative Approach to Snapshot Reporting

Monitoring is the process of making repeatable measurements and analysing the results to detect changes. State of the Environment Monitoring involves monitoring of key indicators (from Beanland and Huser 1999) to determine:

- the environmental ‘baseline’ - quality and quantity;
- marked changes or gradual trends away from that baseline;
- the cause-effect relationship between human activity (‘pressure’), actions (‘management response’), and environmental outcomes (the ‘state’);
- the success and effectiveness (‘performance’) of resource management policy.

## ‘State’ Indices Used in 2002 and 2005

- Ecological Character

Ecological character, in relation to indigenous species, is a measure of compositional integrity. Ecological character has been assessed qualitatively against broad criteria describing regeneration of indigenous species *in situ*, the relative frequency of exotic species at a site, and whether the vegetation is dominated by indigenous or exotic species (Wildland Consultants 2000, 2002). However, even if forests are comprised primarily or completely of indigenous species, and hence have high ecological character scores, the vegetation might not be in excellent condition. Being dominated by indigenous species means only that the vegetation contains few or no exotic species. It does not necessarily mean that communities are in good biodiversity condition, depending on the frame of reference.

- Number and Distribution of Threatened Species

Emphasis on rarity assumes that the presence of rare species is an indicator of habitat quality. However, the causal relationship underlying the use of threatened species as indicators is tenuous, and this indicator is only useful if we have reason to link the presence of threatened species to habitat quality (Wildland Consultants 2000). In many cases the presence of rare species may not necessarily indicate

habitat quality because, in New Zealand, direct predation, rather than habitat degradation or even habitat destruction, is now the primary cause of species declines for both plants and animals. New Zealand shares this somewhat unusual ecological characteristic with other oceanic island groups, including Hawai'i, Fiji, and Guam (Fritts and Rodda 1998; Craig *et al.* 2000). This is true for a number of species traditionally believed to require habitats of perceived high quality, such as the relationship between kokako and unmodified primary forest (Lavers 1978). The fact that contemporary indigenous birds utilise exotic plantation forest habitats can call into question our preconceptions surrounding the fit between organisms, particularly threatened organisms, and their environment. So does the successful breeding of kokako on small offshore islands in vegetation established from plantings which were part of an ecological restoration project.

Furthermore, threatened species are so because they maintain small population sizes. This predisposes those populations to extinction and colonisation events due to neutral processes of death, reproduction, and dispersal which are components of functional metapopulations (Hubbell 2001), and nothing to do with patch quality.

- Presence and Abundance of Pest Animals and Pest Plants

It is now widely acknowledged that an array of invasive species have decimated New Zealand terrestrial biodiversity (Holdaway 1989), and that their impacts are on-going (i.e. Clout *et al.* 1995; Innes *et al.* 1999; Wilson *et al.* 1998; McLennan *et al.* 1996, 2004). The logical induction from this recognition is that habitats with invasive species are experiencing adverse impacts, therefore must be undergoing biodiversity decline, whereas habitats without invasive species must be healthy because they have been relieved of the degradative pressures exerted by these organisms. Although this is an oversimplification it is a valid argument. Absence of weeds or rodents implies relief from their impacts. There is evidence correlating the recovery of populations and species with the removal of pest organisms in New Zealand, and evidence of a causal relationship for this response (O'Donnell *et al.* 1992; Clout *et al.* 1995; Innes *et al.* 1999). Likewise the decline of species and populations correlated with the expansion of pest organisms is well documented in New Zealand (Craig *et al.* 2000). Given the implementation of active pest management, the otherwise unaided recovery of species is only possible if they persist in impacted areas or are capable of returning of their own accord.

### Monitoring in the Best of Both Worlds

Biological diversity, or “biodiversity”, describes the variety of all biological life - plants, animals, fungi, and microorganisms - the genes they contain and the ecosystems on land or in water where they live. It is the diversity of life on earth (New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy 2000). The simplest way of describing community and regional diversity is simply count the number of species present (Magurran 1988). This type of count expresses how rich or poor in species a community or region is. However, the problem with a simple count is that as more individuals are sampled, the number of species detected will increase (Bunge and Fitzpatrick 1993). This means that both sample size and the density of individuals

within different communities will influence the raw count of species (Hurlbert 1971; Gotelli and Colwell 2001).

Advantages of species density as indicator of biodiversity condition include:

- An objective estimate of the total number of species, and the number and diversity of indigenous and exotic species can be estimated for areas using measures of species density.
- The data upon which estimates of density are based can be obtained relatively time effectively.
- The estimation method corrects for differences in sampling effort, however sample size must be sufficient for accumulation curves to distinguish between density patterns.

Because the density of individuals varies between communities, species richness must be calculated from samples based either on area, or on the basis of a sampling unit that can be related to counts of individuals.

If sample areas are relatively small, and occurrence data recorded in the form of presence absence, an estimate of the number of species present within an SES can be obtained relatively quickly, and hence cost-effectively. If the sampling strategy is appropriately stratified, data on biodiversity can be obtained simultaneously to data on other indicators, such as abundance and distribution of pest plants. The value of data on biodiversity status, when quantified in terms of species density will, in the long term, more than outweigh costs associated with its collection.

Counts of woody species could be incorporated into measurements to assess canopy condition and health through time. Changes in rank abundance distributions can indicate changes and degradation induced by environmental weeds or browsing animals. Species richness - quantified on the basis of counts of individuals - may decline, and rank abundance distributions shift toward more uneven communities as indigenous species are usurped by browsing animals and replaced by exotic species.

This type of data would also facilitate the comparison of existing sites within Tauranga City with comparable sites elsewhere, particularly those that do not suffer the same suite of potential degradative impacts as remnants within the City.

#### Permanent Sample Plots

The sampling unit for an estimate of species density could be a small bounded area, say  $2 \times 2$  meters, or slightly larger. Species occurring within a bounded area would be recorded as present only. Sampling could focus on perennial species only to avoid seasonal influence and to speed data collection. If information on canopy species richness and evenness is required, a count of the number of individuals of each species occurring within the plot area could be made.

It may be advantageous to stratify sampling by vegetation type and edge versus interior. A spatially explicit sampling strategy can also be used to monitor weed

occurrence and distribution, and hence changes in both through time. However, the distribution of these sampling points need not be predetermined, nor must they be the same between sampling years. The only requirement is that a sufficient number of samples are obtained to distinguish between density patterns at different sites. A pilot study would be necessary to estimate the number of samples needed to achieve this.

Species density is relevant, analytically robust, cost-effective, simple and easily understood and would complement assessment of ecological character as indicators of state.

## 8. OVERVIEW AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS

Habitat destruction continues within Tauranga City, despite the fact that less than 5.0 percent of the terrestrial area of the Tauranga Ecological District retains a cover of predominantly indigenous vegetation. More than any indicator, this is the most striking indictment on how accommodating we are of indigenous biodiversity loss within the landscapes within which we live. At face value, the area of SES has increased over the period 2005-2008, but this observation over-simplifies interactions between habitat loss and the dynamics integral to healthy indigenous systems. During the current reporting period, the rate of vegetation colonisation on mudflats and dunes has outstripped the rate of habitat destruction in other areas. In the longer term, pressures on SESs will undoubtedly increase as a consequence of current habitat destruction and requirements for future land development.

The very act of drawing boundaries around indigenous areas maintains the dichotomy between 'use' and 'preservation' within New Zealand landscapes. Cultural and natural terrestrial landscapes are both components of a single system, and both have capacity for greater integration, with mutual benefit. In the longer term, the health of remnants within Tauranga City will be improved by increasing the linkages between cultural and natural landscapes within the city.

The long term maintenance and enhancement of indigenous biodiversity within Tauranga City is dependant on the willingness of local communities to lead this. Community involvement rests upon the participation of local people, and that is a function of whether we as a people continue to value the presence of indigenous biodiversity in our cultural landscapes, or otherwise.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We would like to thank § 7(2)(f)(iii) (Tauranga City Council) for instigating this project.

## REFERENCES

- Beadel S.M. 1992a: Tauranga Harbour wetland vegetation. Bay of Plenty Regional Council, Whakatane. 82 pp. plus maps.
- Beadel S.M. 1994a: Significant indigenous vegetation of the Bay of Plenty coastal zone. *Wildland Consultants Ltd.* Report prepared for Bay of Plenty Regional Council.
- Beadel S.M. 1995b: Vegetation and flora of Tauranga District Council coastal reserves (Shark Alley to Papamoa). Tauranga District Council, Tauranga. 49 pp.
- Beadel S.M. 2006b: Regionally uncommon plant species in the Bay of Plenty. *Wildland Consultants Contract Report No. 1175a.*
- Beadel S.M. and Shaw W.B. 2000: Category one natural heritage sites in the Tauranga Ecological District and Te Aroha and Waihi Ecological Districts in the Bay of Plenty Region. *Wildland Consultants Ltd Contract Report No. 353.* 17 pp plus maps.
- Bibby C.J.; Shaw W.B.; Beadel S.M. and Hosking M.A. 1999: Vegetation and flora of Mauao Historic Reserve. Volumes 1 & 2. *Wildland Consultants Ltd Contract Report No. 266.* 57 pp. plus maps.
- Bunge J. and Fitzpatrick, M. 1993: Estimating the number of species; a review. *Journal of the American Statistics Association* 88: 364-373.
- Clout M.N., Denyer K., James R.E. and McFadden I.G. 1995: Breeding success of New Zealand pigeons (*Hemiphaga novaeseelandiae*) in relation to control of introduced mammals. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology* 19: 209-212
- Colwell R.K. 2000a: EstimateS: Statistical Estimation of Species Richness and Shared Species from Samples Software and User's Version 6. <http://viceroy.eeb.uconn.edu/estimates>
- Craig J., Anderson S., Clout M., Creese B., Mitchell N., Ogden J., Roberts M. and Ussher G. 2000: Conservation issues in New Zealand. *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics* 31: 61-78.
- Cuming P. 2006: Murder on the Mount. *Southern Bird* No. 26 June 2006.
- de Lange P.J., Norton D.A., Courtney S.P., Heenan P.B., Barkla J.W., Cameron E.K., Hitchmough A.J. 2009: Threatened and uncommon plants of New Zealand (2008 revision). *New Zealand Journal of Botany* 47: 61-96.
- Environment Bay of Plenty 2006: Environment Bay of Plenty Community Outcomes Survey 2006. Strategic Policy Publication 2007/02. Environment Bay of Plenty.
- Fritts T.H. and Rodda G.H. 1998. The role of introduced species in the degradation of island ecosystems. *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics* 29: 113-140

- Gotelli N. J. and R.K. Colwell 2001: Quantifying biodiversity: procedures and pitfalls in the measurement and comparison of species richness. *Ecology Letters* 4: 379-391.
- Heck K.L. Jr, van Belle G. and Simberloff D. 1975: Explicit calculation of the rarefaction diversity measurement and the determination of sufficient sample size. *Ecology* 56: 1459-1461.
- Holdaway R. N. 1989: New Zealand's pre-human avifauna and its vulnerability. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology* 12: 11-25.
- Hubbell S. P. 2001: The Unified Neutral Theory of Biodiversity and Biogeography. Princeton University Press, Princeton, U.S.A.
- Hurlbert S.H. 1971: The nonconcept of species diversity: a critique and alternative parameters. *Ecology* 52: 577-585.
- Innes J., Hay J.R., Flux I., Bradfield P., Speed H. and P. Jansen 1999: Successful recovery of North Island kokako (*Callaeas cinerea wilsoni*) populations, by adaptive management. *Biological Conservation* 87: 210-14
- Kenny J.A. and Hayward B.W. 1996: Inventory and Maps of Important Geological Sites and Landforms in the Bay of Plenty Region. *Geological Society of New Zealand Miscellaneous Publication* 86. 47 pp plus maps.
- Kirk T. 1873: Notes on the flora of the Lake District of the North Island. *Transactions of the New Zealand Institute* 5: 322-345.
- Krummel J.R., Gardner R.H. Sugihara G., O'Neill R.V. and Coleman P.R. 1987: Landscape patterns in a disturbed environment. *Oikos* 48: 321-324.
- Lavers R.B. 1978: Distribution of the North Island kokako. *Notornis* 25: 165-185.
- Magurran A.E. 1988: Ecological Diversity and its Measurement. Princeton University Press, Princeton, U.S.A.
- McLennan J.A., Dew L., Miles J., Gillingham N. and Waiwai R. 2004: Size matters: predation risk and juvenile growth in North Island brown kiwi (*Apteryx mantelli*) *New Zealand Journal of Ecology* 28: 241-250
- McLennan J.A., Potter M.A., Robertson H.A., Wake G.C., Colbourne R., Dew L., Joyce L., McCann A.J., Miles J., Miller P.J. and Reid J. 1996: Role of predation in the decline of kiwi, *Apteryx* spp., in New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology* 20, 27-35.
- Miskelly C.M., Dowding J.E., Elliott G.P., Hitchmough R.A., Powlesland R.G., Robertson H.A., Sagar P.M., Scofield R.P., Taylor G.A. 2008: Conservation status of New Zealand birds, 2008. *Notornis* 55: 117-135.
- Mitchell C.P. 1990: Whitebait spawning grounds in the Bay of Plenty. *New Zealand Freshwater Fisheries Miscellaneous Report No. 40., investigation No. S7040/342.* MAF Fisheries. Prepared for Department of Conservation, Rotorua.

- Patton D.R. 1975: A diversity index for quantifying habitat edge. *Wildlife Society Bulletin* 3: 171-173.
- O'Donnell C.F.J., Dilks P.J. and Elliott G.P. 1992: Control of a stoat population irruption to enhance yellowhead breeding success. *Science and Research Internal Report No. 124*. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- OSNZ 2006: Classified, summarised notes, BOP/Volcanic Plateau, 1 July 2003 – 30 June 2006. Ornithological Society of New Zealand (OSNZ).
- Owen K.L. 1993: Protection and Restoration of Marshbird Habitat in Tauranga Harbour. Volumes I (report) and II (maps). *Technical Report Series No. 17*. Department of Conservation, Bay of Plenty Conservancy, Rotorua. 101 pp. plus maps.
- Rutledge D. 2003: Landscape indices as measures of the effects of fragmentation: can pattern reflect process? *DOC Science Internal Series 98*. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Simpson G.G. 1964: Species density of North American recent mammals. *Systematic Zoology* 13: 57-73.
- Wildland Consultants 2000a: Indigenous biodiversity of Tauranga District - selection of indicators for state of the environment monitoring and reporting. *Wildland Consultants Ltd Contract Report No. 287*. Prepared for Tauranga District Council.
- Wildland Consultants 2000b: Indigenous biodiversity of Tauranga District. *Wildland Consultants Ltd Contract Report No. 309*. Prepared for Tauranga District Council.
- Wildland Consultants 2000c: Biodiversity monitoring for Tauranga District 2000 Category 1 significant ecological sites: ecological condition, photopoint monitoring. *Wildland Consultants Ltd Contract Report No. 315*. Prepared for Tauranga District Council.
- Wildland Consultants Ltd 2002a: Biodiversity monitoring for Tauranga District 2002 – Category 1 significant ecological sites: ecological condition assessment; photopoint monitoring. *Wildland Consultants Ltd Contract Report No. 483*. Prepared for Tauranga District Council. 6 pp plus appendices.
- Wildland Consultants Ltd 2004a: Conservation plan for Mauao Historic Reserve 2004 - Volumes 1 and 2. *Wildland Consultants Ltd Contract Report No. 730*. Prepared for Tauranga City Council. Volume 1 75 pp; Volume 2 62 pp.
- Wildland Consultants 2005: Indigenous biodiversity of Tauranga City - State of the Environment Reporting 2005. *Wildland Consultants Ltd Contract Report No. 1256*. Prepared for Tauranga City Council.
- Wildland Consultants Ltd 2005e: Indigenous Biodiversity of Tauranga City - State of the Environment Report 2005. *Wildland Consultants Contract Report No. 1256*. Prepared for Tauranga City Council. 110 pp plus maps.

- Wildland Consultants Ltd 2005g: Vegetation and habitat types of the lower Kaituna River, Western Bay of Plenty. *Wildland Consultants Contract Report No. 1281*. Prepared for Environment Bay of Plenty.
- Wildland Consultants 2006: Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region. *Wildland Consultants Contract Report No. 1345*. Prepared for Environment Bay of Plenty. Volume 1 - 553 pp, Volume 2 - Maps - 49 pp.
- Wildland Consultants Ltd 2007b: Vegetation and habitat types of the lower Kaituna River, Western Bay of Plenty. *Contract Report No. 1281* - updated from 2005. Prepared for Environment Bay of Plenty.
- Wildland Consultants 2007c: Ecological Networks and Connections in the Smartgrowth Project Area Outside of the Catchment of Tauranga Harbour. *Contract Report No. 1404a*. Prepared for Environment Bay of Plenty.
- Wildland Consultants 2007d: Overview of Ecological Networks and Connections in the Smartgrowth Project Area. *Contract Report No. 1404b*. Prepared for Environment Bay of Plenty.
- Wildland Consultants 2008a: Natural areas in Tauranga Ecological District. *Wildland Consultants Contract Report No. 1914*. Prepared for Environment Bay of Plenty. 681 pp.
- Wildland Consultants Ltd 2008b: Indigenous biodiversity of Tauranga City - State of the Environment Reporting 2008. *Wildland Consultants Ltd Contract Report No. 2053*. Prepared for Tauranga City Council. 41 pp plus 28 aerial maps.
- Wilson P.R., Karl B.J., Toft R.J., Beggs J.R. and Taylor T.H. 1998: The role of introduced predators and competitors in the decline of Kaka (*Nestor meridionalis*) populations in New Zealand. *Biological Conservation* 83: 175-185.



APPENDICES



## VEGETATION AND HABITAT CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM

To assess the overall status of biodiversity and to monitor change, a conceptual framework is useful that identifies the components of biodiversity at several levels of organisation (Noss 1990). A system was devised for the classification of vegetation and habitats in the Tauranga District, with reference to the types of ecosystems present, the issues that the classification system could be used to address, and with reference to existing classification systems (Atkinson 1985; Environment BOP Wetland Database Categories; the Land Cover Database (LCDB); Leathwick *et al.* 1995; Wildland Consultants Ltd in prep.).

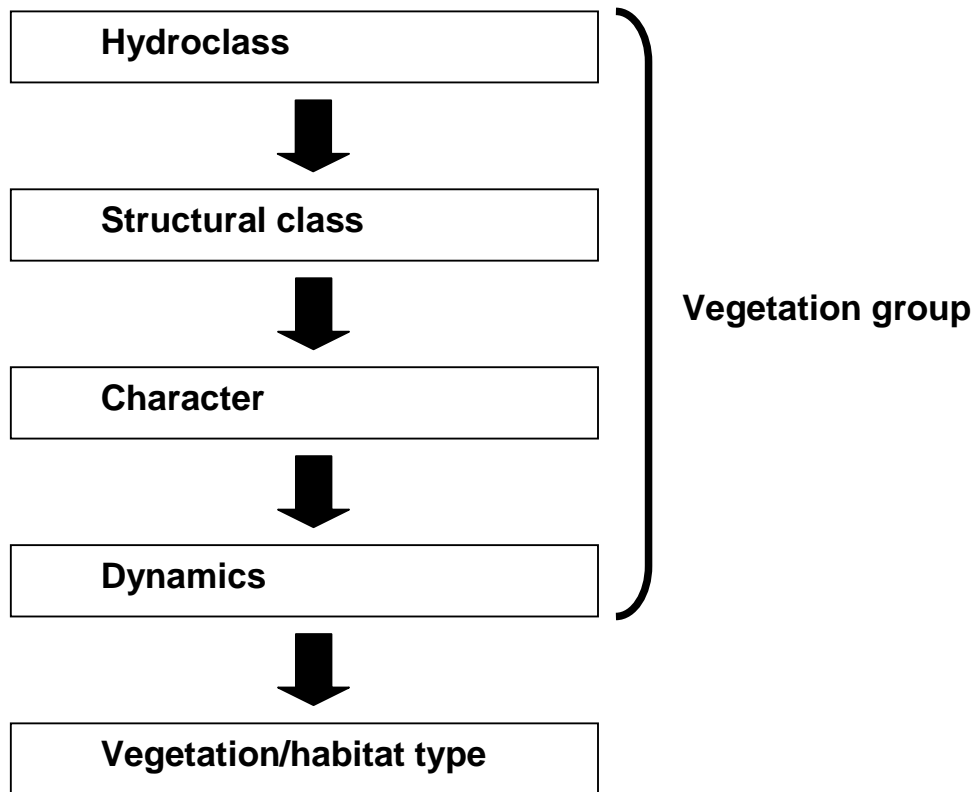
The vegetation and habitat classification system is based to a large extent on Atkinson's (1985) units. A five level classification was developed, being generally hierarchical (the two upper levels, 1 and 2, represent broader levels of organisation than the lowest level, 5), but with two descriptive levels, 3 and 4. Brief definitions of the five levels are provided in Table 1.

Table 1: Names and definitions of the five levels in the vegetation and habitat classification system

Level	Name	Definition
1	Hydroclass	A hydrological classification of a particular site, e.g. estuarine (refer below).
2	Structural class	The vegetation structural class (e.g. forest), following Atkinson (1985), based on the growth forms of the canopy species (refer below).
3	Character	The state of the vegetation in terms of the relative proportions of indigenous and exotic species in the canopy (refer below).
4	Dynamics	Essentially an assessment of the successional state of the vegetation, including a category for primary vegetation which has been modified. This was applied to scrub and forest only (refer below).
5	Vegetation/habitat type	An abbreviated name for a vegetation/habitat type including the dominant species, following Atkinson's (1985) method for vegetation classification (refer below).

There is no limit to the number of individual vegetation/habitat types (Level 5) that can be recognised in the classification system. A summary of the top four levels, termed a 'vegetation group' (refer to Figure 1 below), was created by combining the numerical codes in order from Levels 1 to 4 to give a five digit summary code. Only one category can be selected for each of Levels 1-4 and only one vegetation type described in Level 5. Definitions of the categories in Levels 1-4 and the method for derivation of a vegetation/habitat type are provided below.

Figure 1: Vegetation and habitat classification hierarchy



#### Numerical Codes

Predefined categories were assigned to levels 1-4. Each category was also assigned a numerical code, 1 digit for hydroclass (level 1), character (level 3) and dynamics (level 4), and 2 digits for structural class (level 2). The numerical codes for each component were grouped together in order from levels 1 to 4, providing a five digit summary code referred to as a 'vegetation group'.

A five digit numerical code was used for each vegetation/habitat type, (level 5). The first two digits correspond to the structural class code (level 2) while the last three digits are a unique code for the vegetation/habitat type. There is no limit to the number of individual vegetation/habitat types that can be recognised (the current coding system only allows for 999 within each structural class, but this can be amended to provide for a much larger number). In some cases an additional 6<sup>th</sup> decimal digit was used. This digit denotes differences between vegetation types that comprise mosaics of one or more vegetation types, where the constituent vegetation types vary only in the proportions and not in the species composition (e.g. codes 06009.1 and 06009.2 in Appendix 1).

#### Level 1 - Hydroclasses

- |               |   |
|---------------|---|
| 1-Terrestrial | All areas on land that are not wetlands (c.f. other hydroclass categories).   |
| 2-Estuarine   | Tidal and non-tidal saline wetlands associated with a coastal body of water with a free connection to the open sea and where fresh water, |

derived from land drainage (usually rivers) is mixed with sea water (Allaby 1994).

- 3-Palustrine Small open-water bodies, vegetated wet ground, and all other non-tidal wetlands not covered by riverine or lacustrine (Buxton 1991).
- 4-Riverine Flowing waters contained within a channel e.g., streams, rivers and their margins (Buxton 1991).
- 5-Lacustrine Dams or lakes with open water (Buxton 1991).

#### Level 2 - Vegetation/Habitat Structural Classes (From Atkinson 1985)

- 01-Forest Woody vegetation in which the cover of trees and shrubs in the canopy is >80% and in which tree cover exceeds that of shrubs. Trees are woody plants >10 cm dbh. Tree ferns >10 cm dbh are treated as trees.
- 02-Treeland Vegetation in which the cover of trees in the canopy is 20-80%, with tree cover exceeding that of any other growth form, and in which the trees form a discontinuous upper canopy above either a lower canopy of predominantly non-woody vegetation or bare ground, e.g. mahoe/bracken treeland. (Note: Vegetation consisting of trees above shrubs is classified as either forest or scrub depending on the proportion of trees and shrubs in the canopy.)
- 03-Vineland Vegetation in which the cover of unsupported (or artificially supported) woody vines in the canopy is 20-100% and in which the cover of these vines exceeds that of any other growth form or bare ground. Vegetation containing woody vines that are supported by trees or shrubs is classified as forest, scrub or shrubland. Examples of woody vines occur in the genera *Actinidia*, *Clematis*, *Lonicera*, *Metrosideros*, *Muehlenbeckia*, *Ripogonum*, *Vitis* and others.
- 04-Scrub Woody vegetation in which the cover of shrubs and trees in the canopy is >80% and in which shrub cover exceeds that of trees (cf forest). Shrubs are woody plants <10cm dbh.
- 05-Shrubland Vegetation in which the cover of shrubs in the canopy is 20-80% and in which the shrub cover exceeds that of any other growth form or bare ground. It is sometimes useful to separate tussock-shrublands as a subclass for areas where tussocks are >20% but less than shrubs. (Note: the term scrubland is not used in this classification.)
- 06-Tussockland (including flaxland). Vegetation in which the cover of tussocks in the canopy is 20-100% and in which the tussock cover exceeds that of any other growth form or bare ground. Tussocks include all grasses, sedges, rushes, and other herbaceous plants with linear leaves (or linear non-woody stems) that are densely clumped and > 10 cm height. Examples of the growth form occur in all species of *Cortaderia*, *Gahnia* and

*Phormium*, and in some species of *Chinochloa*, *Poa*, *Festuca*, *Rytidosperma*, *Cyperus*, *Carex*, *Uncinia*, *Juncus*, *Astelia*, *Aciphylla* and *Celmisia*. It is sometimes useful to separate flaxland as a subclass for areas where species of *Phormium* are dominant.

- 07-Fernland Vegetation in which the cover of ferns in the canopy is 20-100% and in which the fern cover exceeds that of any other growth form or bare ground. Tree ferns >10 cm dbh are excluded as trees (cf. forest).
- 08-Grassland Vegetation in which the cover of grass in the canopy is 20-100% and in which the grass cover exceeds that of any other growth form or bare ground. Tussock-grasses are excluded from the grass growth-form.
- 09-Sedgeland Vegetation in which the cover of sedges in the canopy is 20-100% and in which the sedge cover exceeds that of any other growth form or bare ground. Included in the sedge growth form are many species of *Carex*, *Uncinia*, *Isolepis*, and *Bolboschoenus*. Tussock-sedges and reed-forming sedges (cf. reedland) are excluded.
- 10-Rushland Vegetation in which the cover of rushes in the canopy is 20-100% and in which the rush cover exceeds that of any other growth form or bare ground. Included in the rush growth form are some species of *Juncus*, and all species of *Sporadanthus*, *Empodisma*, and *Apodasmia*. Tussock-rushes are excluded.
- 11-Reedland Vegetation in which the cover of reeds in the canopy is 20-100% and in which the reed cover exceeds that of any other growth form or open water. Reeds are herbaceous plants growing in standing or slowly-running water that have tall, slender, erect, unbranched leaves or culms that are either hollow or have a very spongy pith. Examples include *Typha*, *Bolboschoenus*, *Schoenoplectus tabernaemontani*, *Eleocharis sphacelata*, and *Baumea articulata*.
- 12-Cushionfield Vegetation in which the cover of cushion plants in the canopy is 20-100% and in which the cushion-plant cover exceeds that of any other growth form or bare ground. Cushion plants include herbaceous, semi-woody and woody plants with short densely packed branches and closely spaced leaves that together form dense hemispherical cushions. The growth form occurs in all species of *Donatia*, *Gaimardia*, *Hectorella*, *Oreobolus*, and *Phyllachne* as well as in some species of *Aciphylla*, *Celmisia*, *Centrolepis*, *Chionohebe*, *Colobanthus*, *Dracophyllum*, *Drapetes*, *Haastia*, *Leucogenes*, *Luzula*, *Myosotis*, *Poa*, *Raoulia*, and *Scleranthus*.
- 13-Herbfield Vegetation in which the cover of herbs in the canopy is 20-100% and in which the herb cover exceeds that of any other growth form or bare ground. Herbs include all herbaceous and low-growing semi-woody plants that are not separated as ferns, tussocks, grasses, sedges, rushes, reeds, cushion plants, mosses or lichens.

- 14-Mossfield Vegetation in which the cover of mosses in the canopy is 20-100% and in which the moss cover exceeds that of any other growth form or bare ground.
- 15-Lichenfield Vegetation in which the cover of lichens in the canopy is 20-100% and in which the lichen cover exceeds that of any other growth form or bare ground.
- 16-Rockland Land in which the area of residual bare rock exceeds the area covered by any one class of plant growth-form. Cliff vegetation often includes rocklands. They are named from the leading plant species when plant cover  $\geq 1\%$ , e.g. [koromiko] rockland.
- 17-Boulderfield Land in which the area of unconsolidated bare boulders (>200 mm diam.) exceeds the area covered by any one class of plant growth-form. Boulderfields are named from the leading plant species when plant cover  $\geq 1\%$ .
- 18-Stonefield/gravelfield Land in which the area of unconsolidated bare stones (20-200 mm diam.) exceeds the area covered by any one class of plant growth-form. The appropriate name is given depending on whether stones or gravel form the greater area of ground surface. Stonefields and gravelfields are named from the leading plant species when plant cover  $\geq 1\%$ .
- 19-Sandfield Land in which the area of bare sand (0.02 - 2 mm diam.) exceeds the area covered by any one class of plant growth-form. Dune vegetation often includes sandfields which are named from the leading plant species when plant cover  $\geq 1\%$ .
- 20-Loamfield/Peatfield Land in which the area of loam and/or peat exceeds the area covered by any one class of plant growth-form. The appropriate name is given depending on whether loam or peat forms the greater area of ground surface. Loamfields and peatfields are named from the leading plant species when plant cover  $\geq 1\%$ .

### Level 3 - Character

- 1-Indigenous >50% of the plant species in the canopy are indigenous.
- 2-Exotic >50% of the plants species in the canopy are exotic

### Level 4 - Dynamics

- 1-Primary Forest or scrub which has never been logged or cleared in any part. Applied to scrub and forest only.

2-Modified	Primary forest or scrub in which the structure or composition of the vegetation has been changed by human activities. Applied to scrub and forest only.
3-Secondary	A stage of vegetation succession characterised by the disruption (clearance) of previously existing forest or scrub leading to a marked change in the composition of the vegetation (Allaby 1994). This term was only applied to scrub and forest.
4-N/A	Not applied - all classes other than scrub and forest.

#### Level 5 - Vegetation/Habitat Type Names

Vegetation/habitat type names were derived using the naming system developed by Atkinson (1985). This system allows several aspects of the vegetation to be summarised in a shorthand form, including the dominant canopy species, structure of the canopy and the structural class. There are two main components to the name - (i) vegetation composition, and (ii) the structural class.

#### Components of a vegetation/habitat type name



#### (i) Composition of vegetation/habitat types

Compositional names were derived from the major canopy species and includes information on both the composition and structure of the canopy. Species that comprise 20% or more of the canopy were usually included in the type name. Where conspicuous species, such as emergent trees, comprise less than 20% of the canopy, they can be included in the compositional name as their exclusion would not convey a realistic picture of the vegetation. In cases where no species comprise 20% of the canopy, the two most abundant species are used. The range of % cover any one species contributes to the total cover is noted in the compositional name using the following notation:

- tawa over 50% cover of the double underlined species
- tawa between 25-49% cover of the underlined species
- tawa between 5-24% cover of non-underlined species
- (tawa) less than 5% cover of the bracketed species

Canopy structure is conveyed using the following approach:

rimu/tawa indicates that rimu and tawa differ significantly in height and form separate layers, with the rimu emergent above the tawa.

rimu-tawa indicates rimu and tawa occur in the same layer.

(ii) Structural class

This is the same term used in level 2-structural class.

Table 2: Hierarchical classification system for vegetation and habitats

Classification Levels							
1. Hydroclass		2. Structural Class		3. Character		4. Dynamics	
1	Terrestrial	01	Forest	1	Indigenous	1	Primary
2	Estuarine	02	Treeland	2	Exotic	2	Modified
3	Palustrine	03	Vineland			3	Secondary
4	Riverine	04	Scrub			4	N/A
5.	Lacustrine	05	Shrubland				
		06	Tussockland				
		07	Fernland				
		08	Grassland				
		09	Sedgeland				
		10	Rushland				
		11	Reedland				
		12	Cushionfield				
		13	Herbfield				
		14	Mossfield				
		15	Lichenfield				
		16	Rockland				
		17	Boulderfield				
		18	Stonefield/gravelfield				
		19	Sandfield				
		20	Loamfield/peatfield				

Set out below is an example of how the classification system can be applied to an area of estuarine saltmarsh on the margins of Tauranga Harbour, subject to tidal inundation, and made up of oioi (80% of the canopy) and searush (20% of the canopy).

- **Hydroclass = 1-estuarine** [a saline site in an estuary]
- **Structural class = 09-sedgeland** [as per Atkinson's (1985) definition, the cover of sedges (i.e. oioi) in the canopy is 20-100% and the cover of sedges exceeds that of any other growth form, c.f. searush is classified as a tussock]
- **Character = 1-indigenous** [indigenous species comprise more than 50% of the canopy]
- **Dynamics = 4-N/A** [Primary (1), modified (2) and secondary (3) classifications were only applied to the forest and scrub structural classes]
- **Vegetation group =10914**
- **Vegetation/habitat type = 10001 Oioi-searush rushland** [oioi comprises over 50% of the canopy so is double underlined, while the cover of searush is within 5-24% of the canopy so is not underlined; c.f. Atkinson 1985. Sedgeland is the structural class name. The first two digits of the code were derived from the structural class, 09, while the last three digits are the unique identifier for the vegetation types].

## DESCRIPTIONS OF VEGETATION AND HABITAT TYPES WITHIN 2009 SES SITES

Vegetation Group <sup>1</sup>	Vegetation/Habitat Type		Description
	Code <sup>2</sup>	Name	
30122	01001	Ti kouka/grey willow-manuka forest	Grey willow in association with local manuka forms a canopy with scattered emergent ti kouka, over a generally indigenous understorey.
30122	01002	Grey willow forest	Grey willow forms a canopy over a generally indigenous understorey, often comprised of <i>Coprosma tenuicaulis</i> and <i>C. robusta</i> with scattered wheki, <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> , <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> x <i>C. robusta</i> and pampas.
30112	01003	Brush wattle-mamaku-ti kouka forest	Forest characterised by a mix of brush wattle, ti kouka and mamaku in the canopy.
10113	01004	Pohutukawa forest	Pohutukawa dominates the canopy to varying degrees and is generally the only species present.
30122	01005	Grey willow/ <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> forest	A mosaic of grey willow forest <sup>3</sup> (80-95%) and <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> shrubland (5-20%).
30122	01007	Grey willow-manuka forest	Grey willow and manuka dominate the canopy over a generally indigenous understorey is a variation on Vegetation Type 01001.
30122	01008	Grey willow-manuka forest	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 01002 grey willow forest (50-80%) and Vegetation Type 01007 grey willow-manuka forest (20-50%). The understorey comprises predominantly indigenous species.
30122	01009	Grey willow/raupo forest	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 01002 grey willow forest (80-95%) and Vegetation Type 11003 raupo reedland (5-20%). The understorey comprises predominantly indigenous species.
10122	01012	She oak-wattle forest	The canopy is dominated by she-oak and wattle.
	01013	Wattle forest	The canopy is dominated by black wattle.
10113	02001	(Pohutukawa)-(rewarewa)/mamaku-mahoe treefernland	Emergent pohutukawa and rewarewa are thinly scattered over dense mamaku in association with mahoe.
10224	02002	Puriri/mamaku-mahoe/kawakawa treeland	Occasional puriri are emergent over an open canopy of mamaku in association with mahoe and kawakawa in the gaps. The vegetation is relatively modified and

<sup>1</sup> Refer to Appendix 1 of this report for a definition or key to 'vegetation groups'.

<sup>2</sup> These codes are used on the site maps in this report.

<sup>3</sup> The constituent vegetation types in each mosaic are described individually elsewhere in this section.

Vegetation Group <sup>1</sup>	Vegetation/Habitat Type		Description
	Code <sup>2</sup>	Name	
			there are numerous adventive species present, particularly in the understorey. Willows are common along the toeslope and there is a small area of kahikatea.
10224	02003	<u>Mamaku-tree privet</u> treeland	Mamaku and tree privet are the major component of an open and modified treeland. Grey willow occurs along the toe slopes and there are scattered emergent trees including eucalyptus.
10214	02004	<u>Macrocarpa/karaka-pohutukawa</u> treeland	Macrocarpa is emergent over a canopy of karaka in association with pohutukawa.
10214	02005	<u>Mamaku-brush wattle-(Taiwan cherry)-(mahoe)-(hawthorn) treefernland</u>	
10214	02007	<u>Pohutukawa</u> treeland	Pohutukawa forms a treeland with a relatively open canopy. Occasional radiata pine are also present in some areas.
10214	02008	<u>Pohutukawa-rewarewa/akepiro-mingimingi-hangehange-manuka-karamu-mamaku</u> treeland	Emergent pohutukawa and rewarewa are scattered throughout with some local dense concentrations over dense scrub comprising various mixes of akepiro, mingimingi, hangehange, manuka, karamu and mamaku.
30214	02009	<u>Grey willow-manuka-(ti kouka)/raupo-pampas</u> treeland	Grey willow in association with manuka and scattered ti kouka form an open canopy over raupo and pampas.
10224	02011	<u>Brush wattle-mamaku-(mahoe)</u> treeland	Brush wattle in association with mamaku and local mahoe form an open treeland.
10224	02012	<u>Radiata pine-eucalyptus-(sycamore)/pohutukawa-poplar</u> treeland	Radiata pine and eucalyptus in association with sycamore are emergent over pohutukawa and poplar.
10224	02013	<u>Sycamore-karaka-radiata pine</u> treeland	An open canopy of sycamore and karaka in association with radiata pine.
30224	02015	<u>Grey willow/raupo</u> treeland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 01002 grey willow forest (50-80%) and Vegetation Type 11003 raupo reedland (20-50%).
30224	02016	<u>Grey willow/manuka</u> treeland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 01002 grey willow forest (50%) and Vegetation Type 04008 manuka scrub (50%).
30224	02020	<u>Grey willow/raupo-harakeke-purei</u> treeland	An open canopy of grey willow is present over varying mixes of raupo, harakeke and purei. In some areas the grey willow canopy is absent.
10224	02024	<u>Maritime pine/boxthorn-radiata pine/pohuehue</u> treeland	
10224	02025	<u>Robinia-brush wattle-(pohutukawa)-karaka-(eucalyptus sp.)</u> treeland	
10324	03005	<u>Japanese honeysuckle/Carex geminata</u> vineland	Mats of Japanese honeysuckle on swards of <i>Carex geminata</i> and blackberry.
10413	04001	<u>(Pohutukawa)-(kanuka)-(rewarewa)-(totara)/mahoe-whauwhaupaku-manuka-karamu-hawthorn-mingimingi</u> scrub	Occasional pohutukawa, kanuka, totara and rewarewa are emergent over a variable canopy generally comprising mahoe, manuka, whauwhaupaku, karamu, hawthorn and mingimingi.
30423	04002	<u>Manuka-gorse</u> scrub	Scrub dominated by manuka and gorse. The two species tend to form monospecific stands within these areas, most probably a reflection of previous clearance.

Vegetation Group <sup>1</sup>	Vegetation/Habitat Type		Description
	Code <sup>2</sup>	Name	
10423	04003	<u>Gorse</u> -manuka-Spanish heath-pampas scrub	Scrub dominated by gorse in association with manuka, Spanish heath and pampas. Occasional karamu, sapling pohutukawa and akepiro are also present in the canopy.
10423	04004	<u>Gorse</u> -Spanish heath-pampas-bracken-smilax scrub	Dense scrub of relatively low stature dominated by exotic species. The canopy is dominated by gorse in association with Spanish heath, pampas, bracken and smilax.
10413	04005	<u>Kawakawa</u> - <u>whau</u> -mamaku scrub	A local area of scrub dominated by kawakawa in association with whau and mamaku.
10413	04006	Mahoe-karamu-mamaku-hangehange scrub	Secondary scrub dominated by a mix of mahoe, mingimingi, hangehange and karamu. There are a few scattered large emergent pohutukawa.
20411	04007	<u>Mangrove</u> scrub	Mangrove forms extensive monospecific stands of low statured scrub on mud flats.
30411	04008	<u>Manuka</u> scrub	Manuka dominates the canopy and is generally the only canopy species present. Occasionally there are low numbers of ti kouka.
10413	04009	<u>Manuka</u> -kanuka-mingimingi-(pohutukawa) scrub	Secondary scrub dominated by manuka in association with kanuka, mingimingi and occasional young pohutukawa.
10413	04010	<u>Mapou</u> -mingimingi-mahoe-karamu scrub	Secondary scrub dominated by mapou in association with mingimingi, mahoe and karamu.
10413	04011	<u>Ngaio</u> scrub	Planted ngaio. Pohutukawa forms a minor component of the canopy at some sites.
10423	04012	Pohutukawa/ <u>gorse</u> -pampas scrub	Gorse in association with pampas forms dense scrub with occasional emergent pohutukawa.
10413	04013	Pohutukawa/mingimingi-akepiro-hangehange scrub	Scattered large pohutukawa are emergent over a dense canopy of mingimingi, akepiro and hangehange. Other minor canopy components include mamaku, whauwhaupaku and mahoe.
10413	04014	<u>Totara</u> -mahoe-hawthorn scrub	Totara in association with mahoe and hawthorn form a dense scrub of variable height. Other minor canopy components include mamaku, mapou and whauwhaupaku.
30412	04015	<u>Grey willow</u> / <u>manuka</u> - <u>raupo</u> scrub	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 04008 manuka scrub (>50%), Vegetation Type 11003 raupo reedland (20-30%) and Vegetation Type 01002 grey willow forest (20-30%).
20411	04016	<u>Mangrove</u> - <u>oioi</u> -searush scrub	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 04007 mangrove scrub (>50%), Vegetation Type 10009 oioi sedgeland (30-45%) and Vegetation Type 06002 searush tussockland (5-20%).
10413	04018	<u>Pohutukawa</u> - <u>karo</u> - <u>taupata</u> - <i>Melicytus novae-zelandiae</i> -ngaio scrub	Pohutukawa in association with karo, taupata, <i>Melicytus novae-zelandiae</i> and ngaio form a variable canopy. Much of this vegetation has originated from plantings, and there also have been recent plantings of these species within this vegetation type.

Vegetation Group <sup>1</sup>	Vegetation/Habitat Type		Description
	Code <sup>2</sup>	Name	
10423	04019	(Brush wattle)-mamaku/gorse-woolly nightshade-mahoe-hangehange scrub	Mamaku and occasional brush wattle are emergent over a dense low canopy of gorse in association with woolly nightshade, mahoe and hangehange.
10423	04020	(Wattle)/mamaku-Japanese honeysuckle-gorse scrub	A highly modified area comprising a variable and open canopy of mamaku-Japanese honeysuckle and gorse with scattered emergent wattle. Mamaku, Japanese honeysuckle and gorse tend to occur as a mosaic of monospecific patches.
10423	04023	Gorse-woolly nightshade scrub	Gorse in association with woolly nightshade forms a dense low scrub. There are occasional emergent mamaku, brush wattle, pines and tree privet.
10413	04024	Akeake-manuka-tarata-kohuhu-ti kouka-ngaio-koromiko-harakeke scrub	Secondary scrub established through plantings. Composition varies from area to area, but generally comprises mixes of akeake, manuka, tarata, kohuhu, ti kouka, ngaio, koromiko and harakeke. Other species present at lower abundance include pohutukawa, whau, karo, karaka and puriri.
10412	04025	Mamaku-tarata-Taiwan cherry-kohuhu-titoki-karaka-makomako scrub	A very diverse canopy, common elements including mamaku, tarata, Taiwan cherry, kohuhu, titoki, karaka and makomako.
10423	04026	Gorse-blackberry scrub	A dense thicket of gorse with blackberry.
30514	05001	<i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> shrubland	Shrubland dominated by <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> in association with locally common harakeke, toetoe and raupo. There are occasional manuka and a few individuals of <i>Olearia solandri</i> and <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> x <i>C. robusta</i> .
30514	05002	<i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> -manuka-pampas shrubland	<i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> is the common canopy dominant in association with scattered manuka, harakeke and local pampas and gorse. Marsh ribbonwood is common adjacent to the salt marsh.
30514	05003	Manuka-grey willow/harakeke- <i>Baumea juncea</i> -marsh ribbonwood shrubland	Manuka in association with grey willow are emergent over harakeke, <i>Baumea juncea</i> and marsh ribbonwood, which tend to occur towards the shoreline. Sea rush occurs locally next to the shore.
10524	05005	Gorse-pampas tussock-shrubland	Dominated by gorse in association with pampas. Occasional akeake and pohutukawa are present within this vegetation type on Mauao.
20514	05006	Marsh ribbonwood shrubland	Marsh ribbonwood dominant shrubland, with oioi and searush occasionally present on seaward margin.
30514	05007	Grey willow/gorse- <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> -manuka-harakeke shrubland	Scattered grey willow are emergent over an open canopy of gorse, <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> , manuka and harakeke shrubland.
10514	05008	Kawakawa-pohuehue/pohuehue-blackberry shrubland	Shrubland comprising kawakawa with pohuehue surrounded by low statured pohuehue and blackberry.
10524	05009	Whau-karamu-taupata-manuka-karo-harakeke shrubland	A recently cleared and planted area. Species planted include whau, karamu, taupata, manuka, karo and harakeke.

Vegetation Group <sup>1</sup>	Vegetation/Habitat Type		Description
	Code <sup>2</sup>	Name	
20514	05010	<u>Mangrove</u> shrubland	Extensive areas of open shrubland comprised almost solely of mangrove on mudflats.
10514	05011	Mamaku/ <u>kawakawa</u> shrubland	Numerous mamaku are emergent over an open canopy of kawakawa. The open nature of the kawakawa canopy is the result of recent weed control work. Native species planted in canopy gaps includes manuka, karamu, kawakawa, mahoe, whau and puriri.
30514	05012	<u>Manuka</u> shrubland	Manuka dominates this area with occasional <i>Coprosma tenuicaulis</i> , <i>C. robusta</i> , grey willow, harakeke, and local toetoe and/or ti kouka.
10514	05013	Manuka-(pohutukawa)-(akeake)-(mingimingi) shrubland	A partially cleared area previously dominated by gorse. The current vegetation comprises scattered manuka with a few pohutukawa, akeake and mingimingi.
30514	05014	<u>Grey willow/manuka-raupo</u> shrubland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 01002 grey willow forest (20-50%), Vegetation Type 04008 manuka scrub (20-50%) and Vegetation Type 11003 raupo reedland (20-50%).
30514	05015	Manuka-harakeke-toetoe shrubland	Shrubland of variable height, comprising manuka in association with harakeke, toetoe and <i>Baumea juncea</i> with scattered oioi. Raupo is common in some areas.
30514	05016	<u>Manuka</u> -harakeke-ti kouka-(raupo)-(oioi) shrubland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 05021 manuka-harakeke-ti kouka shrubland (>90%), Vegetation Type 11003 raupo reedland (<5%) and Vegetation Type 10009 oioi sedgeland (<5%).
30514	05017.1	<u>Manuka</u> -(raupo) shrubland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 04008 manuka shrubland (>95%) and Vegetation Type 11003 raupo reedland (<5%).
30514	05017.2	<u>Manuka-raupo</u> shrubland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 04008 manuka shrubland (50-80%) and Vegetation Type 11003 raupo reedland (20-50%).
30514	05018	Whau-karamu-ngaio-(tarata)-(manuka)-(pohutukawa)-(taupata)/kikuyu grass-cocksfoot shrubland	A planted area comprising whau, karamu and ngaio in association with tarata, manuka, pohutukawa and taupata.
10514	05019	Pohutukawa/mahoe-mingimingi-hawthorn-kawakawa-gorse shrubland	Mahoe, mingimingi, hawthorn, kawakawa and gorse form an open canopy of variable composition. There are several large emergent pohutukawa present and several dense patches of bracken.
20514	05020	<i>Olearia solandri</i> -harakeke-marsh ribbonwood-oioi- <i>Baumea juncea</i> -pampas-grey willow shrubland	Shrubland generally comprising a mix of <i>Olearia solandri</i> , harakeke, marsh ribbonwood, <i>Baumea juncea</i> , pampas and grey willow. <i>Baumea articulata</i> , manuka and raupo are locally common.
10523	05022	Pampas/gorse-Spanish heath-manuka-harakeke/exotic grasses shrubland rockland	Parts of Mauao were burned in 2003. Scattered pampas on the steepest slopes. Low stature shrubs (average height approximately 0.5 m). Occasional boneseed, ngaio (possibly planted), karamu, and other indigenous shrub species.
10513	05023	Manuka-harakeke-ngaio-pohutukawa/exotic grasses shrubland	Areas on Mauao planted in 2005.

Vegetation Group <sup>1</sup>	Vegetation/Habitat Type		Description
	Code <sup>2</sup>	Name	
10513	05024	Dead pohutukawa/dead small trees/bracken-gorse-hangehange-pampas-woolly nightshade shrubland	Pohutukawa forest on Mauao that was burned in 2003.
20614	06002	<u>Searush</u> tussockland	Tussockland generally comprised of dense monospecific stands of searush.
30614	06004	Pohutukawa-taupata/ <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> tree-tussockland	A rock outcrop characterised by pohutukawa, taupata and <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> .
20614	06005	Brush wattle-grey willow/ <u>harakeke</u> -pampas tussockland	Harakeke in association with pampas dominate this vegetation type with numerous emergent brush wattle and grey willow.
10614; 30614	06006	Harakeke-pampas-manuka-marsh ribbonwood/ <u>searush-oioi</u> tussockland	Harakeke, pampas, manuka and marsh ribbonwood are emergent over searush and oioi.
20614	06007	<u>Harakeke</u> flaxland	Harakeke dominates these areas forming a dense cover.
20614	06008	<u>Searush-oioi</u> -(pasture) tussockland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 06002 searush tussockland (20-50%), Vegetation Type 10017 searush-oioi rushland (20-50%), Vegetation Type 06014 searush-(pasture) tussockland (5-20%), and Vegetation Type 10009 oioi rushland (5-20%).
20614	06009.1	<u>Searush-oioi</u> tussockland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 06002 searush tussockland (80-95%) and Vegetation Type 10017 searush-oioi rushland (5-20%).
20614	06009.2	<u>Searush-oioi</u> tussockland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 06002 searush tussockland (50-80%) and Vegetation Type 10017 searush-oioi rushland (20-50%).
20614	06010	<u>Searush-oioi</u> tussockland	A mosaic of searush tussockland (50-80%) and oioi rushland (20-50%).
20614	06011	<u>Searush-oioi</u> -mangrove tussockland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 06002 searush tussockland (>60%), Vegetation Type 10009 oioi rushland (5-20%) and Vegetation Type 05010 mangrove shrubland (5-20%).
20614	06012	<u>Searush-Samolus repens</u> -marsh ribbonwood- <i>Baumea juncea</i> -oioi tussockland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 19001 sandfield (25%), Vegetation Type 09022 marsh ribbonwood- <i>Baumea juncea</i> -oioi-searush sedgeland (25%), Vegetation Type 06002 searush tussockland (25%) and Vegetation Type 13004 <i>Samolus repens</i> herbfield (25%).
20614	06013	<u>Searush-oioi</u> tussockland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 06002 searush tussockland (>50%) and Vegetation Type 10009 oioi rushland (<50%).
20614; 30614	06014	<u>Searush</u> -(pasture) tussockland	Searush tussockland with pasture grasses locally present between searush tussocks.
30624	06015	Grey willow/ <u>pampas-harakeke</u> tussockland	Grey willow is emergent over pampas and harakeke. Composition varies between areas. In some places <i>Baumea articulata</i> is a significant component of the vegetation.
30614	06016	Pampas-harakeke-manuka- <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> /raupo-bracken-( <i>Baumea articulata</i> ) shrub-tussockland	Shrub-tussockland characterised by pampas, harakeke, manuka and <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> with lower statured raupo, bracken and <i>Baumea articulata</i> .
20614	06017	Harakeke-pampas-raupo-gorse- <i>Coprosma propinqua</i>	Harakeke, pampas, raupo, gorse and <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> are

Vegetation Group <sup>1</sup>	Vegetation/Habitat Type		Description
	Code <sup>2</sup>	Name	
		subsp. <i>propinqua</i> /searush-oioi-(marsh ribbonwood)- ( <i>Baumea articulata</i> ) shrub-tussockland	emergent over searush and oioi in association with marsh ribbonwood and <i>Baumea articulata</i> .
20614	06018	<u>Searush</u> -harakeke-marsh ribbonwood- <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> tussockland	Searush dominates this tussockland in association with harakeke, marsh ribbonwood and <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> .
20614	06019	<u>Searush</u> -mangrove-oioi-marsh ribbonwood tussockland	Tussockland comprising searush in association with mangrove, oioi and marsh ribbonwood.
20614	06020	Raupo-pampas-harakeke- <i>Baumea articulata</i> /oioi-mangrove-searush rush-tussockland	A highly variable vegetation type generally comprising raupo, pampas, harakeke and <i>Baumea articulata</i> emergent over oioi, mangrove and searush.
30624	06021	<u>Pampas</u> tussockland	Pampas dominated tussockland. Other minor elements include manuka and harakeke.
30624	06022	Ti kouka/ <u>pampas</u> tussockland	Tussockland comprising pampas with scattered emergent ti kouka.
20614	06023	Marsh ribbonwood/searush- <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> / <i>Samolus repens</i> - <i>Sarcocornia quinqueflora</i> tussockland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 06024 marsh ribbonwood/searush- <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> tussockland (50-80%) and Vegetation Type 13005 <i>Samolus repens</i> - <i>Sarcocornia quinqueflora</i> herbfield (20-50%). The herbfield tends to occur along the seaward margins of the tussockland.
20614	06024	Marsh ribbonwood/ <u>searush</u> - <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> tussockland	Marsh ribbonwood are emergent over a dense cover of searush and <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> .
20614	06025	<i>Ficinia nodosa</i> -searush/ <i>Samolus repens</i> - <i>Sarcocornia quinqueflora</i> tussockland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 06027 <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> -searush tussockland (50-80%), and Vegetation Type 13005 <i>Samolus repens</i> - <i>Sarcocornia quinqueflora</i> herbfield (20-50%). The herbfield tends to occur along the seaward margins of the tussockland.
20614	06026	Gorse-pampas-harakeke-marsh ribbonwood/searush-oioi-mangrove tussockland	Gorse, pampas, harakeke and marsh ribbonwood are emergent over searush, oioi and mangrove. The three lower statured species tend to occur on the seaward margin.
20614	06027	<i>Ficinia nodosa</i> -searush tussockland	Tussockland dominated by <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> in association with searush.
30612	06028	harakeke- <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> /raupo- <i>Baumea articulata</i> flax-reedland	Harakeke and <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> are emergent above swards of raupo and <i>Baumea articulata</i> . Other species include reed sweetgrass ( <i>Glyceria maxima</i> ), watercress, pohuehue, and occasional ti kouka.
	06029	(Pampas)/sea rush-oioi- <i>Baumea juncea</i> -(marsh ribbonwood) tussockland with local mangrove	
10714	07001	Pohutukawa/ <u>bracken</u> fernland	Occasional pohutukawa are emergent over a dense cover of bracken.
10824	08001	(Manuka)/cocksfoot-paspalum-bidibid grassland	An open grassy clearing dominated by cocksfoot and paspalum in association with bidibid. Scattered manuka are present throughout, and <i>Paesia scaberula</i> , bracken and kiokio are locally dominant.
10824	08004	(Ngaio)-(harakeke)-(pohutukawa)/introduced ice plant-	Scattered ngaio, harakeke and pohutukawa have been planted on the old leisure

Vegetation Group <sup>1</sup>	Vegetation/Habitat Type		Description
	Code <sup>2</sup>	Name	
		Indian doab-kikuyu grass grassland	land site, with the majority of the vegetation cover comprising introduced ice plant, Indian doab and kikuyu grass.
10824	08005	<i>Ficinia nodosa</i> - <i>Muehlenbeckia complexa</i> /ratstail-cocksfoot- <i>Poa annua</i> grassland	Grassland characterised by exotic species including ratstail, cocksfoot and <i>Poa annua</i> with scattered <i>Isolepis nodosa</i> and <i>Muehlenbeckia complexa</i> .
30824	08008	<i>Juncus effuses</i> /pasture grassland	
20914	09006	<i>Baumea juncea</i> -harakeke-oioi sedgeland	<i>Baumea juncea</i> in association with harakeke and oioi characterise this vegetation.
20914	09007	Mangrove/ <i>Schoenoplectus pungens</i> sedgeland	<i>Schoenoplectus pungens</i> comprises the majority of the vegetation cover in association with mangrove.
20914	09016	<i>Schoenoplectus pungens</i> sedgeland	<i>Schoenoplectus pungens</i> forms monospecific stands below the mean high tide level.
20914	10001	Oioi-mangrove-searush-raupo shrub-rushland	A variable vegetation type, generally comprising oioi in association with mangrove, searush and raupo.
20914	10002	Oioi- <i>Baumea articulata</i> -marsh ribbonwood rushland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 10010 oioi- <i>Baumea articulata</i> rushland (>50%), Vegetation Type 10012 oioi-marsh ribbonwood shrub-rushland (20-45%), and Vegetation Type 10009 oioi rushland (5-20%).
31013	10002	ti kouka/ <i>Juncus edgariae</i> /pasture rushland	Scattered ti kouka emergent above grazed <i>Juncus edgariae</i> and pasture.
20914	10003	Marsh ribbonwood/oioi-searush rushland	Marsh ribbonwood is locally emergent over oioi and searush.
20914	10004	<i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> /oioi rushland	<i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> is the dominant canopy component with oioi forming a dense cover between and beneath the shrubs. Other minor components of the canopy include marsh ribbonwood, toetoe and <i>Olearia solandri</i> .
20914	10005	Oioi-searush rushland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 10009 oioi sedgeland (50%), and Vegetation Type 06002 searush tussockland (50%).
20914	10008	Manuka/oioi-searush-marsh ribbonwood rushland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 06002 searush tussockland (20-50%), Vegetation Type 10009 oioi rushland (20-50%), Vegetation Type 10012 oioi-marsh ribbonwood shrub-rushland (5-20%), and Vegetation Type 04008 manuka shrubland (5-20%).
20914	10009	Oioi rushland	Oioi forms extensive monospecific stands, however in some areas a variety of other species form a minor component of the canopy. These species include searush, marsh ribbonwood, mangrove, <i>Baumea articulata</i> and <i>B. juncea</i> amongst others.
20914	10010	Oioi- <i>Baumea articulata</i> rushland	Oioi dominant rushland with <i>Baumea articulata</i> common.
20914	10011	Oioi- <i>Baumea juncea</i> rushland	Rushland comprising about equal proportions of oioi and <i>Baumea juncea</i> .
20914	10012	Oioi-marsh ribbonwood shrub-rushland	Oioi in association with marsh ribbonwood are generally the only canopy species and are present in varying proportions.

Vegetation Group <sup>1</sup>	Vegetation/Habitat Type		Description
	Code <sup>2</sup>	Name	
20914	10013	<u>Oioi-marsh ribbonwood-harakeke</u> - <i>Baumea juncea</i> rushland	Rushland dominated by oioi with scattered marsh ribbonwood, <i>Baumea juncea</i> and harakeke. Occasional <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> , tall fescue and searush are also present.
20914	10014	(Grey willow)/(manuka)/ <u>oioi-searush</u> -(raupo) rushland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 10009 oioi rushland (>50%), Vegetation Type 06002 searush tussockland (20-50%), Vegetation Type 11003 raupo reedland (<5%), Vegetation Type 04008 manuka shrubland (<5%), and Vegetation Type 01002 grey willow forest (<5%).
20914	10015	(Manuka)/ <u>oioi-searush</u> -marsh ribbonwood rushland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 10009 oioi rushland (>50%), Vegetation Type 06002 searush tussockland (20-45%), Vegetation Type 10012 oioi-marsh ribbonwood shrub-rushland (5-20%), and Vegetation Type 04008 manuka scrub (<5%).
20914	10017	<u>Searush-oioi</u> rushland	This vegetation type has been modified by drainage and/or grazing and has a canopy comprised of searush and oioi with local marsh ribbonwood, batchelor's button and <i>Samolus repens</i> .
20914	10018	<u>Oioi-searush</u> -(marsh ribbonwood) rushland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 10009 oioi rushland (80-95%), Vegetation Type 06002 searush tussockland (5-20%), and Vegetation Type 10012 oioi-marsh ribbonwood shrub-rushland (<5%).
20914	10019	<u>Oioi-Bolboschoenus fluviatilis</u> rushland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 10009 oioi rushland (80-95%) and Vegetation Type 11004 <i>Bolboschoenus fluviatilis</i> reedland (5-20%)
20914	10020.1	<u>Oioi-searush</u> rushland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 10009 oioi rushland (80-95%) and Vegetation Type 06002 searush tussockland (5-20%).
20914	10020.2	<u>Oioi-searush</u> rushland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 10009 oioi rushland (50-80%) and Vegetation Type 06002 searush tussockland (20-50%).
20914	10021	<u>Oioi-marsh ribbonwood</u> rushland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 10009 oioi rushland (50%) and Vegetation Type 10012 oioi-marsh ribbonwood shrub-rushland (50%).
41114	11001	<u>Raupo-Baumea articulata</u> reedland	Raupo and <i>Baumea articulata</i> form dense stands on river margins.
31114	11002	<u>Baumea articulata</u> reedland	<i>Baumea articulata</i> is the dominant species in this type and forms a tall, dense cover. Other species often present as minor components include raupo and oioi.
31114	11003	<u>Raupo</u> reedland	Reedland comprised almost solely of raupo, but often with a minor component of <i>Baumea articulata</i> .
31114; 41114	11004	<u>Bolboschoenus fluviatilis</u> reedland	<i>Bolboschoenus fluviatilis</i> forms monospecific stands on channel margins.
31114	11005	<u>Raupo-oioi-Baumea articulata</u> reedland	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 10010 oioi- <i>Baumea articulata</i> rushland (50%) and Vegetation Type 11003 raupo reedland (50%).
31114	11006	<u>Baumea articulata-Muehlenbeckia complexa</u> reedland	Reedland comprising <i>Baumea articulata</i> in association with <i>Muehlenbeckia complexa</i> on estuarine margins.
31114	11007	Grey willow/ <u>raupo</u> -harakeke-pampas reedland	Numerous scattered grey willow are emergent over raupo in association with

Vegetation Group <sup>1</sup>	Vegetation/Habitat Type		Description
	Code <sup>2</sup>	Name	
31114	11008	<i>Baumea articulata</i> -harakeke-raupo reedland	harakeke and pampas. <i>Baumea articulata</i> in association with harakeke and raupo characterise this reedland.
41114	11009	<i>Baumea articulata</i> - <i>Bolboschoenus fluviatilis</i> -raupo reedland	Reedland comprising <i>Baumea articulata</i> and <i>Bolboschoenus fluviatilis</i> in association with raupo.
31112	11010	Raupo-flax reedland	Reedland dominated by raupo and flax, with local marsh ribbonwood, grey willow, manuka, <i>Olearia solandri</i> , karamu, <i>Baumea articulata</i> , and pampas.
31114	11011	Raupo- <i>Baumea articulata</i> reedland	Raupo and <i>Baumea articulata</i> are dominant.
21314	13001	Arrow grass herbfield	Small herbfields comprised solely of arrow grass occurring on mudflats.
21314	13002	( <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> )-(manuka)/ <i>Baumea articulata</i> -mangrove-oioi-(searush)/arrow grass herbfield	<i>Baumea articulata</i> , mangrove, oioi and occasional searush are scattered over arrow grass herbfield. Occasional <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> and manuka are present on the margins.
11614	16002	( <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> )-(pohutukawa)-( <i>Coprosma acerosa</i> x <i>C. repens</i> ) rockland	Scattered <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> , pohutukawa and <i>Coprosma acerosa</i> x <i>C. repens</i> are present on Mussel Rock.
11614	16003	(Taupata)-(pohutukawa)/(oioi)/( <i>Sarcocornia quinqueflora</i> )-(Senecio <i>lautus</i> ) rockland	Scattered taupata, pohutukawa, oioi, <i>Sarcocornia quinqueflora</i> and <i>Senecio lautus</i> are present on the rock faces on the margin of Moturiki Island.
21914	19001	Sandfield	Small sandy spits and beaches dominated by sand with a wide range of species present at low abundance. Species present include <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> , spinifex, <i>Carex pumila</i> , <i>Austrostipa stipoides</i> and harakeke amongst others.
21914	19002	<i>Sarcocornia quinqueflora</i> sandfield	A mosaic of Vegetation Type 19001 sandfield (80-95%) and Vegetation Type 13003 <i>Sarcocornia quinqueflora</i> herbfield (5-20%).
22014	20001	Mangrove loamfield	Scattered mangrove at of low abundance on mudflats.
	22000	Open water	
	23000	No Data	
10314	30101	Pohuehue- <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> vineland	Pohuehue dominated vineland on established foredunes and transgressing dunefield, from 30cm high at seaward edge to 60cm high at inland edge, with <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> clumps toward the inland edge. A range of weedy garden escaped exotics are present in parts, including <i>Arctotis</i> , rain daisy, iceplant ( <i>Carpobrotus</i> ), <i>Ipomea indica</i> , <i>Vinca major</i> , various succulent species and <i>Agapanthus praecox</i> scattered throughout but more abundant in shorter vineland along the seaward margin.
10314	30102	Pohuehue-bracken vineland	<i>Ficinia nodosa</i> , occasionally with scattered bracken ( <i>Pteridium esculentum</i> ), emergent to 160cm high above dense pohuehue.
10314	30104	Pohuehue-kikuyu vineland	Dense mat of pohuehue with scattered large patches of kikuyu, and small patches of buffalo grass and pigface.

Vegetation Group <sup>1</sup>	Vegetation/Habitat Type		Description
	Code <sup>2</sup>	Name	
10324	30201	Cape ivy vineland	Dense cape ivy growing over and completely smothering pohuehue
10324	30301	Periwinkle vineland	Periwinkle forming dense sward in patches between pohuehue.
	40000	Road	
10422	40201	Gorse-pohuehue scrub	Dense gorse through which pohuehue grows, typically in broad depressions between transgressive dunes.
10524	50301	Lupin/spinifex shrubland	Scattered patches of tree lupin to 50cm tall over spinifex grassland that is typically also invaded by pigface and gazania.
10524	50601	African boxthorn/pohuehue shrubland	Widely scattered African boxthorn over pohuehue and spinifex.
10714	70101	Bracken-pohuehue fernland	Dense bracken and pohuehue mat up to 1 metre deep.
10814	80101	Spinifex-pingao/ <i>Calystegia soldanella</i> grassland	Spinifex with scattered and sometimes widely spaced large clumps of pingao to 40cm high over patches of <i>Calystegia</i> at sand level, on incipient foredune. This grassland is invaded to varying degrees by rain daisy, lupin ( <i>Lupinus arboreus</i> ), iceplant ( <i>Carpobrotus edulis</i> ), gazania, <i>Arctotis</i> , and pig's ear ( <i>Cotyledon orbiculata</i> ), as well as various garden escaped succulents and other exotic herbs. In some areas these exotics, in various combinations, dominate the vegetation.
10814	80102	Spinifex/ <i>Calystegia soldanella</i> grassland	Spinifex dominant with scattered <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> and frequent lupin over <i>Calystegia soldanella</i> .
10824	80201	Marram grassland	Marram dominated grassland, usually with pigface, pohuehue, and <i>Calystegia soldanella</i> , typically on eroded faces of established foredunes.
10824	80301	Buffalo grass-pohuehue grassland	Dense sward of buffalo grass with pohuehue scattered through and over, with scattered woody weeds including geranium, <i>Acacia longifolia</i> and <i>A. sophorae</i> , and herbaceous weeds pigface and pig's ear, and scattered patches of kikuyu.
10824	80401	Kikuyu grassland	Generally a dense sward of kikuyu.
10824	80501	Cocksfoot grassland	<i>Ficinia nodosa</i> scattered over dense swale dominated by cocksfoot, with red fescue, through which scattered pohuehue and bracken occur.
10824	80601	Knot-root bristle-grass grassland	Dense sward of knot-root bristle-grass with pigface and mothplant.
10914	90101	Pingao sedgeland	Dominated by pingao, with patches of spinifex and <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> , typically with haretail during summer. Occassionally with kikuyu and couch.
10914	90201	<i>Carex testacea</i> -pohuehue- <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> sedgeland	Swards of <i>Carex testacea</i> with pohuehue interspersed between clumps, scattered clumps of <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> standing above the sward occurs in slacks behind the foredune.
10914	90301	<i>Ficinia nodosa</i> -pohuehue sedgeland	Dense swards of <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> to 1.6 m high over pohuehue. Sometimes with small amounts of bracken, which increases in abundance with distance from beach.
31114	110101	Raupo reedland	Raupo to 2.4 m tall on saturated peat in dune hollows within transgressing

Vegetation Group <sup>1</sup>	Vegetation/Habitat Type		Description
	Code <sup>2</sup>	Name	
			dunefield.
11324	130301	Flatweeds herbfield	Scattered gorse and clumps of <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> and pohuehue over and through an otherwise dense, low herbfield dominated by <i>Hypochoeris radicata</i> and <i>Calystegia soldanella</i> with patches of kikuyu.
11324	130401	Mixed exotics herbfield	Occasional gorse and broom over tall herbfield to .5 m high containing a diverse array of exotic annuals including <i>Chenopodium album</i> , blackberry ( <i>Rumex fruticosus</i> ), <i>Solanum chenopodioides</i> and inkweed ( <i>Phytolacca octandra</i> ), woolly mullein ( <i>Verbascum thaspus</i> ), <i>Chenopodium pumilum</i> , and <i>Alternanthera</i> sp.
11324	130701	Canna lily herbfield	Pure stand of Canna lily to 2 m tall.
11914	190101	Spinifex sandfield	Scattered culms of spinifex, with few individuals of <i>Calystegia soldanella</i> and <i>Lachnagrostis billiardierii</i> .
11914	190102	Pingao-spinifex sandfield	Scattered spinifex and pingao, typically on newly established incipient foredune, or recently eroded faces of established foredunes.
11914	190103	<i>Carex pumila</i> sandfield	Scattered <i>Carex pumila</i> , with few individuals of <i>Calystegia soldanella</i> on aeolian sand in deposition faces within transgressing dunefield.

## SCIENTIFIC NAMES OF SPECIES REFERRED TO IN THE TEXT

**INDIGENOUS PLANTS**

akeake  
bracken  
clubrush, wiwi  
coastal mahoe  
Cook's scurvy grass  
harakeke, flax  
houpara, coastal five-finger  
kahikatea  
karo  
mahoe  
mangrove  
manuka  
marsh ribbonwood, makaka  
New Zealand spinach  
ngaio  
oioi  
pingao  
panahi  
pohuehue  
pohutukawa  
sand pimelea  
sand tussock  
searush  
shore spurge  
spinifex  
swamp maire, maire tawake  
tauhinu  
taupata  
ti kouka, cabbage tree  
toetoe

*Dodonaea viscosa*  
*Pteridium esculentum*  
*Ficinia nodosa*  
*Meliccytus novae-zelandiae*  
*Lepidium oleraceum*  
*Phormium tenax*  
*Pseudopanax lessonii*  
*Dacrycarpus dacrydioides*  
*Pittosporum crassifolium*  
*Meliccytus ramiflorus*  
*Avicennia marina* subsp. *australasica*  
*Leptospermum scoparium*  
*Plagianthus divaricatus*  
*Tetragonia tetragonioides*  
*Myoporum laetum*  
*Apodasmia similis*  
*Desmoschoenus spiralis*  
*Calystegia soldanella*  
*Muehlenbeckia complexa*  
*Metrosideros excelsa*  
*Pimelea villosa*  
*Austrofestuca littoralis*  
*Juncus kraussii* subsp. *australiensis*  
*Euphorbia glauca*  
*Spinifex sericeus*  
*Syzygium maire*  
*Ozothamnus leptophylla*  
*Coprosma repens*  
*Cordyline australis*  
*Cortaderia fulvida*

**ADVENTIVE PLANTS**

arum lily  
banana passionfruit  
black wattle  
blackberry  
blue morning glory  
boneseed  
boxthorn  
brush wattle  
Cape ivy

*Zantedeschia aethiopica*  
*Passiflora tripartita* var. *mollissima*  
*Racosperma mearnsii*  
*Rubus fruticosus* agg.  
*Ipomoea indica*  
*Chrysanthemoides monolifera*  
*Lycium ferocissimum*  
*Paraserianthes lophantha*  
*Senecio angulatus*

caper spurge  
Chinese privet  
climbing asparagus  
climbing dock  
cotoneaster  
evergreen buckthorn  
gazania  
German ivy  
ginger  
gorse  
grey willow  
haretail  
Japanese honeysuckle  
Japanese spindle tree  
loquat  
lupin  
maritime pine  
marram  
mignonette vine, Madeira vine  
moth plant  
nasturtium  
Norfolk pine  
pampas  
periwinkle  
pink bindweed  
plectranthus  
radiata pine  
rain daisy, dimorphotheca  
reed sweetgrass  
she oak  
silver poplar  
smilax  
South African iceplant  
Spanish heath  
spartina  
Taiwan cherry  
tradescantia (wandering Jew)  
tree privet  
tuber ladder fern  
woolly nightshade

*Euphorbia lathyris*  
*Ligustrum sinense*  
*Asparagus scandens*  
*Rumex sagittatus*  
*Cotoneaster* spp.  
*Rhamnus alaternus*  
*Gazania* spp.  
*Senecio mikanoides*  
*Hedychium* spp.  
*Ulex europaeus*  
*Salix cinerea*  
*Lagurus ovatus*  
*Lonicera japonica*  
*Euonymus japonicus*  
*Eriobotrya japonica*  
*Lupinus arboreus*  
*Pinus pinaster*  
*Ammophila arenaria*  
*Andredera cordifolia*  
*Araujia sericifera*  
*Tropaeolum majus*  
*Araucaria heterophylla*  
*Cortaderia selloana*  
*Vinca major*  
*Calystegia silvatica*  
*Plectranthus ciliatus*  
*Pinus radiata*  
*Osteospermum fruticosum*  
*Glyceria maxima*  
*Casuarina* sp.  
*Populus alba*  
*Asparagus asparagoides*  
*Carpobrotus edulis*  
*Erica lusitanica*  
*Spartina* sp.  
*Prunus campanulata*  
*Tradescantia fluminensis*  
*Ligustrum lucidum*  
*Nephrolepis cordifolia*  
*Solanum mauritianum*

## **INDIGENOUS FAUNA**

banded rail  
fernbird, matata

*Rallus philippensis*  
*Bowdleria punctata*

## CRITERIA FOR THE SELECTION OF SPECIAL ECOLOGICAL SITES (from Wildland Consultants 2000a)

An assessment of the relative significance of natural areas was undertaken following the completion of baseline information documentation. The following criteria were used for the selection of Significant Ecological Sites (SES):

1. Representativeness. The primary criterion, based on a comparison of present vegetation cover vs past extent, diversity and pattern, naturalness, and size.
2. Diversity and pattern. The diversity of ecological and physical features, and the patterns that exist within an area under consideration.
3. Naturalness. The degree to which the vegetation and habitats reflect likely natural character. Most mainland ecosystems are modified but the degree of naturalness is an important consideration.
4. Size and shape. Areas which are relatively large (*i.e.* compared to the mean size of remaining areas of indigenous vegetation in an Ecological District) are preferred to small areas. Small areas can be affected strongly by edge effects. A compact single area is generally preferable to long narrow areas or small separate remnants.
5. Rarity and special features. The relative rarity of physical landscape features, vegetation, habitats and species within an ecological region or district or on a national basis.
6. Buffering and connectivity. The degree to which a natural area is protected or buffered by the surrounding landscape, or provides a buffer to other areas. A site may play an important role by connecting other areas of indigenous vegetation or habitat, or providing a riparian buffer.
7. Viability. The likelihood of an area remaining ecologically viable over time. Larger areas are generally more likely to remain viable with lower levels of management input.

Each Significant Ecological Sites (SES) was assigned to a significance category. These are defined below. The highest ranking category is Category 1.

### *Category 1 SES*

These sites are the best quality or only remaining unprotected representative examples of indigenous vegetation or wildlife habitats on particular landform units within the coastal or semi-coastal bioclimatic zone in the Tauranga District. This category also includes intact altitudinal or geographic sequences across the Tauranga District, or diverse assemblages of landform unit, vegetation, and bioclimatic character.

### *Category 2 SES*

These sites are also good quality representative examples of vegetation and/or wildlife habitat which complement Category 1 areas, and existing protected areas. They include :

- (a) relatively small sites with vegetation types or plant taxa under-represented or not represented in protected natural areas;
- (b) relatively large areas with features which are represented in protected areas or Category 1 but which are nevertheless worthy of protection;
- (c) sites containing vegetation types which would once have been more common in the ecological district and are under-represented in protected natural areas or Category 1, but which have been degraded by weed invasion, animal damage, or other similar agents.
- (d) relatively small sites which still retain their indigenous character or support indigenous fauna populations.

## INDIGENOUS BIODIVERSITY INDICATORS

(Source: Wildland Consultants 2000a)

### **Pressure-State-Response Model**

The Pressure-State-Response model is a conceptual model that has been used by planners and ecologists in a number of studies and investigations (e.g. OECD 1993, Northland Regional Council 2002). The 'Pressure' component is concerned with the stresses operating at a site and may include factors such as habitat destruction, pest animals, weeds, and degraded water quality. 'State' is the condition of a site as a result of the pressures that are operating, and may include such factors as the vegetation types and species that are present and the areal extent of the site. The final part of the model, 'Response', is based on remedies for the 'Pressure' and 'State' components and may include such things as the level of legal protection, and management actions such as weed and animal pest control. The indicators that are being measured in this study follow the Pressure-State-Response model.

### **Pressure Indicators**

#### Area of Wetland and Indigenous Vegetation Removed

The area of wetland and indigenous vegetation that has been removed is indicative of land use pressures such as vegetation removal to enable agricultural or horticultural production, or urban development. In most instances changes in land use results in habitat destruction, which impacts biota and ecosystem processes (such as maintenance of water quality, or erosion prevention). Data for the analysis of this indicator is derived from field observations and detailed vegetation maps.

#### Habitat Fragmentation and Isolation

Fragmentation and isolation relates to the size and connectivity of natural areas. Generally, large natural areas with connections to other natural areas are more sustainable than small areas surrounded by exotic vegetation or urban development, and which therefore are more vulnerable to edge effects, particularly invasion by pest plants. Data for the analysis of this indicator can be derived from vegetation and habitat maps that facilitate analysis of the spatial extent of each natural area and its proximity to other natural areas.

#### Abundance and Distribution of Pests

New Zealand landscapes are invaded by a range of pest animals and plants whose impacts, like the process of invasion itself, are insidious, pervasive, and ongoing. Pest animals and plants pose serious threats to indigenous vegetation and fauna. Pests animals in New Zealand are known to cause local and global extinction of indigenous species (both plants and animals) through predation and competition. Pest plants can precipitate collapse of entire forest stands through disruption of gap-phase regeneration, by either preventing gap-phase regeneration or by outcompeting and replacing indigenous species in gaps. The role of pest animals in facilitating this replacement through the suppression of palatable indigenous species such as kohekohe and kotukutuku is unquantified, but cannot be discounted. The abundance and distribution of pests indicates the degree to which sites are under pressure from known negative impacts associated with pest animals and plants.

### Land Use and Development

Changes in land use and development have on-site impacts and potential off-site impacts. Off-site impacts can include pollution, increased runoff, and decreased water quality that perturb natural areas. In addition, changes in land use (e.g. from agricultural to urban use) adjacent to a site increase human impacts within a site, such as dumping of waste, establishment of exotic plants from gardens, and incursions of domestic animals/predators, such as cats and dogs.

### **State Indicators**

#### Biodiversity Condition and Trend

Biodiversity condition and trend provides a measure of 'ecological integrity' that is not necessarily reflected in data relating to the extent of indigenous vegetation. It includes factors such as the impacts of weeds, animal pests, and human activities. Data to measure this indicator can be derived from empirical measurements and/or standardised observations.

Biodiversity condition and trend ('status of natural area') – specific assessments of selected vegetation/habitat types of species (including weeds and animal pests). This could be done by sampling at selected representative sites within selected natural areas. Appropriate ecological units would need to be selected, based on consideration of landform/hydroclasses/vegetation classes or vegetation types. Monitoring visits would be undertaken annually to collect simple information on vegetation/habitat condition (Wildland Consultants 2000). This could include the following elements, depending on the characteristics of the site:

- pre-selected monitoring sites
- simple habitat descriptors
- selection of specific condition and trend indicators for a site/area
- assessment of canopy cover and composition
- assessment of vegetation condition
- assessment of vegetation trend
- assessment of regeneration
- presence of special plants
- general fauna assessment
- special fauna
- threat agents and effects

The presence of a range of single species is not reflective of community level biodiversity trends. An appropriate response variable should be sensitive to real changes in biodiversity condition at a community and site level.

Community diversity, evenness, and rank abundance distributions for different species can be reflective of biodiversity trends through time, for the trophic communities from which data are derived. These trends may be extrapolated over all biodiversity components.

#### Number and Distribution of Threatened Species

Threatened and uncommon plants of New Zealand are identified by de Lange et al. (2004), and indigenous animals identified in the New Zealand threat classification lists (Hitchmough 2002). The presence of a threatened species at a site can indicate that habitat at the site is less degraded than other similar habitats. An increase in the size or extent of a population of a

threatened species generally indicates an improvement in habitat condition at that site (reflecting a lower level of threat from a threatening agent or process or an increase in available habitat). However, the absence of threatened species from a site does not indicate that the site is of poorer quality than those with threatened species.

## **Response Indicators**

### Area Legally Protected

The area (ha) of legally protected indigenous vegetation and habitats is a measure of public (and political) attitudes to the value of indigenous biodiversity and natural areas. Legal protection is important because it provides impetus to prevent site destruction. However, habitat loss is not the only threatening process causing biodiversity decline and environmental degradation. New Zealand landscapes are invaded by a range of pest animals and plants whose impacts are insidious, pervasive, and on-going. Legal protection does not prevent degradation of sites by pests and weeds. In New Zealand legal protection of habitats is insufficient to effect conservation of biological diversity and maintenance of our indigenous natural heritage due to the extensive impacts of pest animals and plants.

### Location, Area, and Type of Pest and Weed Control

New Zealand landscapes are invaded by a range of pest animals and plants whose impacts, like the process of invasion itself, are insidious, pervasive, and on-going. Pest animals and plants pose serious threats to indigenous vegetation and fauna. In the absence of active management pest animals and plants have negative impacts on indigenous species. Therefore, the locations and extent of pest animal and weed control is an important indicator, not only of public and agency attitudes and priorities, but also of the degree to which sites are under pressure from known negative impacts associated with pest animals and plants.

## ABUNDANCE AND DISTRIBUTION OF PESTS

(Source: Wildland Consultants 2005)

Weed species present within SES 1 (Wairoa River) which have increased in abundance and distribution since 2000 include brush wattle, she-oak, and possibly black wattle (Table 12). Grey willow, pampas, and tree privet are all widespread but there has been no detectable change in their distribution and abundance since 2000. This is probably a reflection of the fact that they were widespread in 2000 and already occupied almost all suitable habitats and micro-sites. Other invasive weed species on the margins of SES 1 include smilax, woolly nightshade, gorse, cotoneaster, and blackberry.

Table 12: Distribution of selected weed species in SES 1 (Wairoa River) in 2000, 2002, and 2005.

Weed species	Weed Distribution Code*		
	2000**	2002***	2005
grey willow	-4	-4	-4
brush wattle	-2	-4	-4
pampas	-3	-3	-3
tree privet	-2	-2	-2
black wattle		-4	-4
she-oak		-4	-4
smilax			-1

\* -8 common throughout SES; -7 patches throughout SES; -6 scattered throughout SES; -5 local patches in two or more vegetation/habitat types; -4 local patches confined to one vegetation/habitat type; -3 locally scattered in two or more vegetation/habitat types;

-2 locally scattered in one vegetation/habitat type; -1 one small infestation; 1 infestation not present; X species not observed

\*\* Wildland Consultants Ltd 2000c

\*\*\* Wildland Consultants Ltd 2002

SES 2 comprises Matua Saltmarsh and Yorke Park. The northern end of Matua Saltmarsh is the subject of a community restoration project which has carried out weed control and reduced the distribution and abundance of pampas and ginger (and also probably of other species) (Table 13). Ginger, gorse, and brush wattle are present on the railway embankment and on the margins of the drains, especially towards the centre of the saltmarsh. In contrast, weed control does not appear to have been undertaken in Yorke Park and grey willow and pampas remain common. Other invasive species in SES 2 include Japanese honeysuckle, she-oak, and blackberry.

Table 13: Distribution of selected weed species in SES 2 (Matua Estuary-Yorke Park) in 2000, 2002, and 2005.

Weed species	Weed Distribution Code*		
	2000**	2002***	2005
grey willow	-4	-4	-4
pampas	-7	-7	-5
ginger	-4	-4	-2
dimorphotheca			-1
she-oak			-1
Japanese honeysuckle			-5

\* -8 common throughout SES; -7 patches throughout SES; -6 scattered throughout SES; -5 local patches in two or more vegetation/habitat types; -4 local patches confined to one vegetation/habitat type; -3 locally scattered in two or more vegetation/habitat types; -2 locally scattered in one vegetation/habitat type; -1 one small infestation; 1 infestation not present; X species not observed.

\*\* Wildland Consultants 2000c.

\*\*\* Wildland Consultants 2002.

In SES 3 (Waikareao Estuary), the distribution of ginger and tradescantia has increased (Table 14). Grey willow and Taiwan cherry remain abundant and widespread, and are canopy dominants on the northern, landward, side of the site (Vegetation Types 01002, 02009, and 04025). Invasive weeds present on the margin of the wetland and at the base of the hillslope include pampas, Japanese honeysuckle, tuber ladder fern, Chinese privet, arum lily, and reed sweetgrass. Additional species on the hill slope include Taiwan cherry, plectranthus, ginger, and climbing asparagus.

Table 14: Distribution of selected weed species in SES 3 (Waikareao Estuary) in 2000, 2002, and 2005.

Weed species	Weed Distribution Code*		
	2000**	2002***	2005
grey willow	-4	-4	-4
pampas	-3	-3	-3
spartina	1	1	X
ginger	-2	-2	-3
tradescantia	-2	-2	-3
Japanese honeysuckle	-2	-2	-2
moth plant	-2	0	X
Taiwan cherry			-4

\* -8 common throughout SES; -7 patches throughout SES; -6 scattered throughout SES; -5 local patches in two or more vegetation/habitat types; -4 local patches confined to one vegetation/habitat type; -3 locally scattered in two or more vegetation/habitat types; -2 locally scattered in one vegetation/habitat type; -1 one small infestation; 1 infestation not present; X species not observed.

\*\* Wildland Consultants 2000c.

\*\*\* Wildland Consultants 2002.

In SES 4 (Waimapu Estuary), the abundance and distribution of brush wattle and Japanese honeysuckle has increased since 2000 (Table 15). No change was detected in the abundance and distribution of grey willow, tree privet, and pampas. Other invasive species at this site include Taiwan cherry, woolly nightshade, Chinese privet, arum lily, ginger, and blackberry.

Table 15: Distribution of selected weed species in SES 4 (Waimapu Estuary) in 2000, 2002, and 2005.

Weed species	Weed Distribution Code*		
	2000**	2002***	2005
grey willow	-4	-4	-4
brush wattle	-2	-3	-4
Japanese honeysuckle	-2	-2	-3
tree privet	-2	-2	-2
pampas	-6	-6	-6
arum lily			-2
Taiwan cherry			-2
ginger			-1

\* -8 common throughout SES; -7 patches throughout SES; -6 scattered throughout SES; -5 local patches in two or more vegetation/habitat types; -4 local patches confined to one vegetation/habitat type; -3 locally scattered in two or more vegetation/habitat types; -2 locally scattered in one vegetation/habitat type; -1 one small infestation; 1 infestation not present; X species not observed.

\*\* Wildland Consultants 2000c.

\*\*\* Wildland Consultants 2002.

The abundance and distribution of pampas and Japanese honeysuckle have increased in SES 5 (Poike) (Table 16). Grey willow, tree privet, and radiata pine may also have spread. Other invasive species include woolly nightshade, blackberry, and Chinese privet.

Table 16: Distribution of selected weed species in SES 5 (Poike) in 2000, 2002, and 2005.

Weed species	Weed Distribution Code*		
	2000**	2002***	2005
grey willow	-6		-7
pampas	-5	-5	-7
tree privet	-1	-3	-2
Japanese honeysuckle	-1	-2	-3
pink bindweed	-1		
radiata pine			-1

\* -8 common throughout SES; -7 patches throughout SES; -6 scattered throughout SES; -5 local patches in two or more vegetation/habitat types; -4 local patches confined to one vegetation/habitat type; -3 locally scattered in two or more vegetation/habitat types; -2 locally scattered in one vegetation/habitat type; -1 one small infestation; 1 infestation not present; X species not observed.

\*\* Wildland Consultants 2000c.

\*\*\* Wildland Consultants 2002.

There has been no detectable increase in the abundance of grey willow, pampas, or pines in SES 6 (Waitao Stream) during 2000-2005 (Table 17). Pampas is present on the margins of the site and on raised areas, such as where spoil from drains has been dumped. Grey willow is common in one vegetation type and pines remain uncommon at the site. However, she-oak is established in the searush tussockland. Other weeds within this SES include black wattle, gorse, woolly nightshade, moth plant, and banana passionfruit.

Table 17: Distribution of selected weed species in SES 6 (Waitao Stream) in 2000, 2002, and 2005.

Weed species	Weed Distribution Code*		
	2000**	2002***	2005
grey willow	-4	-4	-4
pampas	-3	-2	-3
<i>Pinus</i> spp.		-2	-2
She-oak			-2

\* -8 common throughout SES; -7 patches throughout SES; -6 scattered throughout SES; -5 local patches in two or more vegetation/habitat types; -4 local patches confined to one vegetation/habitat type; -3 locally scattered in two or more vegetation/habitat types; -2 locally scattered in one vegetation/habitat type; -1 one small infestation; 1 infestation not present; X species not observed.

\*\* Wildland Consultants 2000c.

\*\*\* Wildland Consultants 2002.

Weed distribution codes were not recorded for SES 7 (Mauao 1) in 2000 and 2002 (Table 18). However, weed control has reduced the distribution and/or abundance of ginger, pampas, gorse, and boneseed (refer to Section 5.5.8 below). Pampas and gorse remain widespread but are less dominant than they were in 2000. Other invasive species that have not been controlled include climbing asparagus, Japanese honeysuckle, smilax, ginger, evergreen buckthorn, mignonette vine, blue morning glory, and Spanish heath. Two seedling loquat trees were observed.

Table 18: Distribution of selected weed species in SES 7 (Mauao 1) in 2000, 2002, and 2005.

Weed species	Weed Distribution Code*		
	2000**	2002***	2005
pampas			-5
gorse			-5
boneseed			-3
climbing asparagus			-3
woolly nightshade			-3
Japanese honeysuckle			-4
loquat			-2

\* -8 common throughout SES; -7 patches throughout SES; -6 scattered throughout SES; -5 local patches in two or more vegetation/habitat types; -4 local patches confined to one vegetation/habitat type; -3 locally scattered in two or more vegetation/habitat types; -2 locally scattered in one vegetation/habitat type; -1 one small infestation; 1 infestation not present; X species not observed.

\*\* Wildland Consultants 2000c.

\*\*\* Wildland Consultants 2002.

No change in weed abundance and distribution was detected in SES 9 (Otira Sand Dunes) during 2000-2005 (Table 19). In part this may be due to the fact that weeds are scattered throughout the SES at relatively low densities, and it would take a large change for any variation to be detected in the abundance and distribution scores. Pampas, evergreen buckthorn, Japanese spindle tree, marram, South African iceplant, exotic grasses, and smilax are present throughout the SES but are more common towards its western end. Lupins are scattered on the foredune. This species has a potentially high negative impact because it is a

nitrogen-fixer, which alters the nutrient status of the substrate and may create habitat suitable for other adventive species.

Table 19: Distribution of selected weed species in SES 9 (Otira Sand Dunes) in 2000, 2002, and 2005.

Weed species	Weed Distribution Code*		
	2000**	2002***	2005
climbing dock	-3	-3	-3
Japanese spindle tree	-2	-3	-2
pampas	-2	-2	-2
blackberry		-2	-2
moth plant		-2	-2
evergreen buckthorn		-3	-2
lupins			-4
marram			-2

\* -8 common throughout SES; -7 patches throughout SES; -6 scattered throughout SES; -5 local patches in two or more vegetation/habitat types; -4 local patches confined to one vegetation/habitat type; -3 locally scattered in two or more vegetation/habitat types; -2 locally scattered in one vegetation/habitat type; -1 one small infestation; 1 infestation not present; X species not observed.

\*\* Wildland Consultants 2000c.

\*\*\* Wildland Consultants 2002.

The abundance and distribution of pampas and Japanese spindletree has decreased in SES 10 (Papamoa Sand Dunes), and climbing dock may have increased (Table 20). Other invasive species present on the dunes include pines, Japanese honeysuckle, lupins, exotic grasses, evergreen buckthorn, and South African iceplant. There is a wide variety of exotic species within the parts of the site that are adjacent to the road including Norfolk pine, freesia, caper spurge, Taiwan cherry, nasturtium, periwinkle, and tradescantia.

Table 20: Distribution of selected weed species in SES 10 (Papamoa Sand Dunes) in 2000, 2002, and 2005.

Weed species	Weed Distribution Code*		
	2000**	2002***	2005
Japanese spindle tree	-3	-3	-2
pampas	-3	-3	-1
radiata and maritime pine	-3	-3	-3
marram	-2	-2	X
Japanese honeysuckle		-3	-3
blackberry		-2	-2
climbing dock		-3	-4
Exotic grasses			-8

\* -8 common throughout SES; -7 patches throughout SES; -6 scattered throughout SES; -5 local patches in two or more vegetation/habitat types; -4 local patches confined to one vegetation/habitat type; -3 locally scattered in two or more vegetation/habitat types; -2 locally scattered in one vegetation/habitat type; -1 one small infestation; 1 infestation not present; X species not observed.

\*\* Wildland Consultants 2000c.

\*\*\* Wildland Consultants 2002.

SES 11 (Kaituna Sand Dunes and Wetland) is less weed-infested than the other Category 1 sites on dunes, and there has been no detectable change in weed distribution or abundance

within the site (Table 21). However, South African iceplant, gazania, and an unidentified succulent plant are present on the dunes near the houses (at the east end of the site), and there is potential that they will spread further if left unchecked.

Table 21: Distribution of selected weed species in SES 11 (Kaituna Sand Dunes and Wetland) in 2000, 2002, and 2005.

Weed species	Weed Distribution Code*		
	2000**	2002***	2005
gorse	-2	-2	-2
Japanese spindle tree	-2	1	X
grey willow	-4	-4	-4
evergreen buckthorn		-3	-2
blackberry		-1	-1
mothplant		-4	X
lupins			-2
South African iceplant**			-2

\* -8 common throughout SES; -7 patches throughout SES; -6 scattered throughout SES; -5 local patches in two or more vegetation/habitat types; -4 local patches confined to one vegetation/habitat type; -3 locally scattered in two or more vegetation/habitat types; -2 locally scattered in one vegetation/habitat type; -1 one small infestation; 1 infestation not present; X species not observed.

\*\* Wildland Consultants 2000c.

\*\*\* Wildland Consultants 2002.

\*\*\*\* At the east end of the site only.

Pampas is present in all ten Category 1 SESs that were surveyed (Table 22). The other most widely distributed species are gorse, woolly nightshade, blackberry, and grey willow. In addition, Japanese spindle tree, lupins, South African iceplant, and evergreen buckthorn are present at all sand dune sites (i.e. SESs 9, 10, and 11). Lupin is a nitrogen-fixer, which alters the nutrient status of the substrate and may create habitat suitable habitat for other introduced species. The site inspections undertaken for this study were not comprehensive weed surveys, so it is almost certainty that the suite of invasive species is even larger and more widely distributed than this study suggests, particularly relatively inconspicuous and/or sub-canopy species.

Table 22: Recorded occurrences of weed species at Category 1 Special Ecological Sites in Tauranga City.

Weed species	SES Number											Number of Occurrences
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	
banana passionfruit						✓						1
boneseed							✓					1
Cape ivy									✓			1
German ivy										✓		1
mignonette (Madeira vine)							✓					1
plectranthus			✓									1
reed sweetgrass			✓									1
tuber ladder fern			✓									1
boxthorn									✓	✓		2
climbing asparagus			✓				✓					2
climbing dock									✓	✓		2
marram									✓	✓		2
periwinkle									✓	✓		2
silver poplar			✓							✓		2
arum lily		✓	✓	✓								3
Japanese spindletree									✓	✓	✓	3
lupin									✓	✓	✓	3
smilax	✓						✓		✓			3
South African iceplant									✓	✓	✓	3
evergreen buckthorn							✓		✓	✓	✓	4
ginger		✓	✓	✓			✓					4
moth plant			✓			✓			✓		✓	4
she-oak	✓	✓	✓			✓						4
Taiwan cherry		✓	✓	✓						✓		4
tradescantia		✓	✓						✓	✓		4
black wattle	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓						5
<i>Pinus</i> spp.					✓	✓	✓		✓	✓		5
tree privet	✓		✓	✓	✓		✓					5
Chinese privet	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				✓			6
Japanese honeysuckle		✓	✓	✓	✓		✓			✓		6
woolly nightshade	✓			✓	✓	✓	✓				✓	6
grey willow	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓					✓	7
blackberry	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓			✓	✓	✓	8
brush wattle	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓					8
gorse	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓		✓	9
pampas	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	10

## BIODIVERSITY CONDITION AND TREND

(Source: Wildlands Consultants 2005)

Since 2000, Biodiversity Condition has trended downwards at eight Category 1 sites (SES numbers 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10, and 11). Biodiversity condition has improved at SES 2 (Matua Estuary-Yorke Park) and SES 7 (Mauao 1) (Table 24). Biodiversity condition was not assessed for Motuotau (SES 8) in 2005 but it trended downwards during 2000-2002.

Table 24: Biodiversity condition scores out of a maximum score of 500, attained by Category 1 Special Ecological Sites in 2000, 2002, and 2005.

Special Ecological Site		Biodiversity Condition Scores		
No.	Name	2000*	2002**	2005
1	Wairoa River	400	354	349
2	Matua Estuary-Yorke Park	453	453	457
3	Waikareao Estuary 1	420	420	401
4	Waimapu Estuary	435	412	412
5	Poike	362	362	307
6	Waitao Stream	466	466	460
7	Mauao 1	335	367	367
8	Motuotau Island	480	400	
9	Otira Sand Dunes	415	405	375
10	Papamoa Sand Dunes	375	360	360
11	Kaituna Sand Dunes and Wetland	411	408	384

\* Wildland Consultants 2000c.

\*\* Wildland Consultants 2002.

Human activities have caused direct negative impacts at nine Category 1 SESs during the period 2000-2005 (refer to Table 25). Negative impacts include pedestrian tracks (SES 7), vehicle tracks (SESs 9, 10, and 11), vegetation clearance (SESs 5, 6, and 11), rubbish dumping (SESs 4, 5, 9, and 10), fire (SES 7), drainage (SESs 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6), and erosion (SES 7).

Positive impacts were evident at five sites, including planting (SESs 2, 3, 7, and 10), restoration works (SESs 2 and 7), and weed control (SESs 2, 4, 7, and 9). There is a lack of information available about the impacts of domestic pets and animal pest control, though it is known that pest animal control has been undertaken in SESs 7, 9, and 10 (refer to Section 5.5.9). It is important to note that the activities that are being considered are only those that had direct impacts during the five-year period from 2000 to 2005 and not modifications that have occurred at a site in the more distant past, e.g. historic vegetation clearance.

Table 25: Impacts of activities in Category 1 Special Ecological Sites (-3 major negative impact; -2 moderate negative impact, -1 minor negative impact, 0 neutral, 1 minor positive impact, 2 moderate positive impact, 3 major positive impact, X impact unknown)

Activity	Category 1 Special Ecological Sites										
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
Recreation (tracks)	0	0	X	0	X	X	-2		-1	-2	-1
vegetation clearance	0	0	0	0	-2	-1	0		0	0	-2
Dumping of inorganic waste	X	X	0	X	-1	0	0		-1	-1	-1
Dumping of organic waste	X	X	X	-1	-1	X	0		-1	-2	X
Domestic stock	X	0	0	0	0	X	X		0	0	X
Planting	0	1	1	X	0	0	2		0	1	X
Fire	0	0	0	0	0	0	-3		0	0	0
Domestic pets	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X
Drainage	0	-1	-1	-2	-1	-1	0		0	0	X
Restoration works	0	2	0	X	0	0	1		0	0	X
Weed control	0	2	X	1	0	0	2		1	X	X
Animal pest control	X	X	X	X	X	X	1		1	1	X
Other							-2*				

\* Erosion

## NUMBER AND DISTRIBUTION OF THREATENED SPECIES

(Source: Wildlands Consultants 2005)

Threatened species have been recorded at eight Category 1 SESs and one Category 2 SES (Table 26). It is not possible to compare these observations between years because there is no empirical or methodological basis for such a comparison. However, it is almost definite that the populations of pingao, shore spurge, and sand tussock have increased during the period 2000-2005 as a result of plantings established by Coast Care. Additionally, swamp maire is being planted at Carmichael Reserve in Bethlehem and in Kopurererua Valley (SES 14) (S. Moohan, TCC, pers. comm.). Swamp maire is not included in the national list of threatened and uncommon plants but it is regionally uncommon and has been greatly reduced in extent within Tauranga Ecological District.

Table 26: Sites in Tauranga City where threatened species of plants and birds have been recorded since 2000.

Site No.	Site Name	Threatened species	Date(s) recorded by SOE monitoring*
1	Wairoa River	fernbird	2000, 2002
3	Waikareao	fernbird	2002
4	Waimpau Esturay	fernbird	2002
5	Poike	fernbird	2002
6	Waitao Stream	fernbird	2002
		banded rail	2002
9	Otira Sand Dunes	pingao	2000, 2002, 2005
		shore spurge	2005
10	Papamoa Sand Dunes	pingao	2000, 2005
		sand tussock	2000, 2005
		sand pimelea	2000, 2005
11	Kaituna Sand Dunes	pingao	2000, 2002, 2005
		sand tussock	2000, 2002
35	Shark Alley to Kaituna Spit Sand Dunes	pingao	2005

\* Wildland Consultants 2000c, Wildland Consultants 2002.

The population of sand pimelea in SES 10 is located on the foredune (GPS coordinates E2803120 N6382757), and can be reached from a beach access route a short distance west of the end of Kirkpatrick Road. The population comprises two patches. The largest patch encompasses an area of *c.*4 m x 4 m with *c.*70% cover. Approximately 3 m away from this patch, towards the beach, is a plant that measures 1.2 m x 0.9 m. Photographs of the population are presented in Appendix 7 (as are images of other SESs). The measurements and photographs can be repeated in future years to detect any change in the size or condition of the population. To the south, the population abuts a track that is used by both walkers and quad bikes, so the plant(s) are unlikely to be able to spread in this direction.

## LOCATION, AREA, AND TYPE OF PEST AND WEED CONTROL

(Source: Wildlands Consultants 2005)

Weed control has been undertaken at SES 2 (Matua saltmarsh), SES 7 (Mauao), and SES 14 (Kopurererua Valley) in concert with restoration projects (refer to Sections 5.4 and 5.5.3, above). Weed control in SESs 9, 10, and 35 (the sand dunes between Mauao and the east end of Papamoa) is also being undertaken, funded through Environment BOP EEF funding.

TCC's annual budget for weed control, excluding that associated with planting projects is \$18,000 (G. Phee, pers. comm., TCC). This enables TCC to respond to some complaints but does not enable site-specific or species-specific control programmes that would achieve ecological outcomes. Unlike natural areas, planted areas do have weed control plans. For example, approximately \$30-35,000 has been spent on weed control in the Kopurererua Valley, including control of gorse, wattles, pampas, blackberry, and grey willow around the old hospital ponds, and a suite of weeds on "Smith's Bank", adjacent to Route K. Control of species such as Japanese honeysuckle, blackberry, and gorse has been undertaken in Johnson Reserve, Welcome Bay, by a community group supported by TCC and Environment BOP.

Apparently small-scale, localised weed control was identified during site visits, including observations of dead and live pampas and woolly nightshade near College Place (SES 5, Waimapu Estuary), dead gorse, pampas, and blackberry near Fraser Cove (SES 5), and recently sprayed pampas on the verge of SH 29 (SES 25 Rangataua).

Rabbit control has been carried out on publicly-owned land in the sand dunes of SESs 9, 10, and 35. It is undertaken "as-needed", and upon the advice of Environment BOP pest control officers (Suzy O'Neill, Environment BOP, pers. comm.). Rabbit control is undertaken more frequently at sites where reinvasion rates are high (for example, at Harrison's Cut) than at sites where reinvasion rates are lower. Animal pest control has been sporadic on Mauao (SES 7) in the past, but rats are now controlled regularly during four months of every year. There are no plans to control mustelids or cats, and possums are only present at low levels (Glenn Ayo, TCC, pers. comm.).

Construction of fences to exclude domestic stock from natural areas can also be regarded as a form of pest control. In 2000, SES 35 (Kaituna River Wetlands) was grazed throughout. Field inspections in 2005 revealed that parts of this SES have now been fenced, and indigenous vegetation is regenerating.

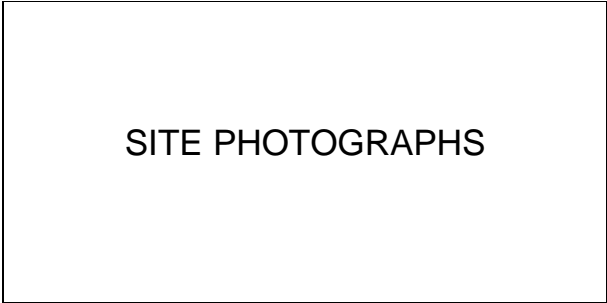




Plate 1: A restored/created wetland and associated plantings on the northern edge of Matua Saltmarsh (SES 2). The boardwalk is visible in the mid-ground, with saltmarsh in the background. Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 2: A view across (manuka)/oioi-searush-marsh ribbonwood sedgeland (Vegetation Type 10015) towards willow forest (Vegetation Type 01002) at Waikareao Estuary (SES 3). Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 3: Waimapu Estuary (SES 4) viewed from near College Road. The estuary margin in the foreground includes pampas, brush wattle, and mahoe. Across the open water of the estuary is a large expanse of searush-oioi tussockland (Vegetation Type 06013) with mangroves on the margins. Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 4: A small stand of kahikatea at the north end of SES 4 (Waimapu Estuary), near Fraser Cove. *Baumea articulata* is in the foreground. Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 5: An infestation of wild ginger, pampas, arum lily, and Japanese honeysuckle in ES 4. Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 6: Willow wetland (Vegetation Type 01002) south of SH29, in SES 5 (Poike). Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 7: Part of SES 6 (Waitao Stream) that has been cleared of oioi-searush sedgeland (Vegetation Type 10020.1) and searush tussockland (Vegetation Type 06002), drained, and excavated to create ponds. Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 8: A view of SES 6 (Waitao Stream) from Asher Road, showing mangrove loamfield (Vegetation Type 20001), mangrove shrubland (Vegetation Type 05010), and clumps of pampas on the landward margin. Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 9: A small part of the area on Mauao (SES 7) that was destroyed by fire in 2003. Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 10: Pampas/gorse-Spanish heath-manuka-harakeke shrubland-rockland (Vegetation Type 05022) on Mauao (SES 7), which has established following the fire of 2003 and replaced vegetation types dominated by various mixtures of pampas and gorse (Vegetation Types 06003, 05005, 16001, and 08002). Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 11: Foredune in SES 9 (Otira Sand dunes), showing pingao in the foreground and spinifex dominant higher on the dune, with a patch of pingao. Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 12: Pingao that has been severely browsed, probably by rabbits, in SES 9 (Otira Sand Dunes). Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 13: Pohuehue-*Ficinia nodosa* vineland (Vegetation Type 30101) in SES 9 (Otira Sand Dunes), with a few shrubs of tauhinu in the foreground, and, in the background at left of frame, evergreen buckthorn. Clubrush is also a component of this vegetation type. Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 14: Sand pimelea, a threatened species, flowering in the Papamoa Sand Dunes (SES 10) between the ends of Parton and Kirkpatrick Roads (GPS location E2803120 N6382757). There is one large, n-shaped patch at centre of frame, adjacent to the track. A smaller patch is located below the brow of the dune, to the right of centre-frame. Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 15: Flowering sand pimelea in the Papamoa Sand Dunes (SES 10, GPS location E2803120 N6382757). This photo can be repeated in future by using Motiti Island, which is on the horizon, as a reference point. Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 16: A small patch of sand pimelea (0.9m x 1.2 m) in SES 10 (Papamoa Sand Dunes). Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 17: A close-up view of flowering sand pimelea amongst haretail, other exotic grasses, panahi, and the native grass *Lachnagrostis billardierei*.  
Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 18: Spinifex and pingao in SES 11 (Kaituna Sand Dunes) that has been damaged by vehicle tracks (a track is visible at lower right of frame).  
Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 19: Johnson Reserve, in Welcome Bay, is a restoration site. A community group is involved and weed control and planting have been undertaken (although some of the species that have been planted are not indigenous). Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 20: A view of the Kaitemako Stream valley, immediately north of Welcome Bay Road, dominated by swards of reed sweetgrass - it is a potential restoration site. Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 21: The banks of Kaitemako Stream, immediately north of the Welcome Bay Road Bridge, are a restoration site and have been planted with indigenous species. The site contrasts strongly with the adjacent part of the stream bank that has not been subjected to weed control or planting (see above).  
Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 22: Part of a potential restoration site in a gully above Welcome Bay and SES 19 (Kaitemako Stream Mouth). Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 23: Rotary Park, Mangatapu, is a potential restoration site - the foreshore could be planted with indigenous sedges and rushes which would buffer it from wave action. Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 24: SES 20 (Welcome Bay) is dominated by mangroves, with patches of harakeke and manuka. Photograph taken in 2005.



Plate 25: Tye Park (SES 21) viewed from Ranginui Road, showing a suite of weeds on the margin and an inlet dominated by mangroves. The ridge in the rearground is a potential restoration site. Photograph taken in 2005.

## MAPS

1. Tauranga City Council (TCC) boundary
2. Special ecological sites in Tauranga City
3. Special ecological sites, and actual and potential restoration sites in Tauranga City
4. Landforms of Tauranga City
5. Legally protected areas in Tauranga City
6. Index Map - Special Ecological Sites (SES) and vegetation/habitat types

**SES SITE DESCRIPTIONS AND  
ASSESSMENTS**

(Sourced from the Tauranga Ecological  
District Natural Areas Report (Wildland  
Consultants 2008a) unless otherwise stated.)

## WAIROA RIVER WETLANDS

<b>SES Number</b>	1
<b>Grid Reference (NZMG)</b>	E2783453 N6386018
<b>Status</b>	Unprotected (including 3.48 ha Margaret Jackson Wildlife Management Reserve)
<b>Site Area</b>	38.8 ha
<b>Altitudinal Range</b>	<20 m asl
<b>Bioclimatic Zone</b>	Coastal and semi-coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Estuarine	Oioi- <i>Baumea juncea</i> rushland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Marsh ribbonwood shrubland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Mangrove scrub and shrubland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Oioi rushland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	<i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> /oioi rushland	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	She-oak-wattle treeland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Oioi-marsh ribbonwood shrub-rushland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Gorse-pampas-harakeke-marsh ribbonwood/searush-oioi-mangrove tussockland	Wetland
Palustrine	Sea rush-oioi-(pasture) tussockland.	Wetland
Palustrine	Manuka scrub.	Wetland
Palustrine	Harakeke flaxland.	Wetland
Riverine	<i>Baumea articulata</i> - <i>Bolboschoenus fluviatilis</i> -raupo reedland; <i>Baumea articulata</i> reedland; <i>Schoenoplectus tabernaemontani</i> reedland.	River margin
Palustrine	Grey willow forest.	Wetland
Palustrine	Raupo-oioi- <i>Baumea articulata</i> reedland.	Wetland
Terrestrial	Brush wattle-mamaku-ti kouka forest.	Hillslope
Terrestrial	Gorse-woolly nightshade scrub (Beadel 1992a, Wildland Consultants 2005e)	Flat

### Vegetation and Indigenous Flora

Wairoa River Wetlands includes estuarine and freshwater wetlands. North of the railway bridge are estuarine wetlands dominated by oioi, sea rush, *Baumea juncea*, and marsh ribbonwood. East of the railway bridge are freshwater wetlands dominated by manuka, and grey willow. Towards the southern end of the site there are wetlands of *Coprosma propinqua* subsp. *propinqua*, oioi, raupo, and *Baumea articulata*. There is also an example of brush wattle-mamaku-ti kouka forest. No rare or uncommon plant species have been recorded at this site.

### Fauna

Australasian bittern (classed as Threatened-Nationally Vulnerable in Miskelly *et al.* 2008), banded rail (classed as At Risk-Naturally Uncommon in Miskelly *et al.* 2008), North Island fernbird (classed At Risk-Declining in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) and spotless crane (classed as At Risk-Relict in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) were recorded in 1990 (Owen 1993). Grey duck (classed as Threatened-Nationally Critical), red-billed gull (classed as Threatened-Nationally Vulnerable), and North Island fernbird (classed as At Risk-Declining in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) have been recorded at this site within the last four years (Wildland Consultants 2002a; 2005e).

### Condition/Pressures

The following weed species are present within the site in suitable habitat:

smilax, she-oak, black wattle, tree privet, Chinese privet, woolly nightshade, grey willow, blackberry, brush wattle, gorse and pampas (Wildland Consultants 2005e).

Weed species which have increased in abundance and distribution at the site since 2000 include brush wattle, she-oak, and possibly black wattle. Grey willow, pampas, and tree privet are widespread in suitable habitat but there has been no detectable change in their distribution and abundance since 2000. This is probably a reflection of the fact that they were widespread in 2000 and already occupied almost all suitable habitats and micro-sites (Wildland Consultants 2005e). There is a building on the Margaret Jackson Wildlife Management Reserve site (used by whitebaiters and game hunters).

**Tauranga City  
Council Category**

1

<b>Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)</b>		
<b>Significance Assessment</b>		
<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	H
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	H
	3.3	M
	3.4	M
	3.5	H
	3.6	H
Diversity and Pattern	3.7	H
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	H
	3.10	M
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	M
	3.12	M
	3.13	M
* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.		
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		
<b>Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level</b>		
Regional		
<b>Significance Justification</b>	Wairoa River Wetlands is a site of reasonable size with a diverse range of indigenous vegetation types and is of regional significance. It contains a representative example of freshwater wetland vegetation adjacent to a river channel (Beadel 1994a). Three threatened and three at risk bird species have been recorded at the site, several within the last four years.	

**Notes**

This site was ranked as a Category 1<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of regional significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report and criteria for assigning categories are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories.

The vegetation was identified as being of District significance in Beadel (1994a) and the site was identified as a Category 1 natural heritage site in the Tauranga Ecological District (Beadel and Shaw 2000).

**References**

Owen 1993; Beadel 1994a; Beadel and Shaw 2000; Wildland Consultants 2005e.

## MATUA ESTUARY - YORKE PARK

<b>SES Number</b>	2
<b>Grid Reference (NZMG)</b>	E2785933 N6387207
<b>Status</b>	Protected (TCC nature reserve, Matua Local Purpose Wildlife Reserve - 21.52 ha) and unprotected parts
<b>Site Area</b>	50.4 ha
<b>Altitudinal Range</b>	<20 m asl
<b>Bioclimatic Zone</b>	Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Estuarine	Gorse-pampas-harakeke-marsh ribbonwood/sea rush-oioi-mangrove tussockland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Sea rush tussockland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Sea rush-mangrove-oioi-marsh ribbonwood tussockland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Sea rush-oioi-mangrove tussockland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Mangrove scrub and shrubland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Mangrove loamfield.	Intertidal flat
Palustrine	Manuka scrub.	Wetland
Terrestrial	Akeake-manuka-tarata-kohuhu-ti kouka-ngaio-koromiko-harakeke scrub (planted).	Flats
Estuarine	(Grey willow)/(manuka)/oioi-sea rush-(raupo) rushland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Oioi-sea rush rushland.	Intertidal flat
Palustrine	Raupo reedland.	Wetland
Estuarine	Oioi rushland.	Intertidal flat
Palustrine	Japanese honeysuckle/ <i>Carex geminata</i> vineland.	Wetland
Palustrine	Manuka-raupo shrubland.	Wetland
Palustrine	Pampas tussockland.	Wetland
Estuarine	Open water.	Estuarine River

(Beadel 1992a, Wildland Consultants 2005e)

### Vegetation and Indigenous Flora

Matua Estuary-Yorke Park is within Tauranga City and its catchment is predominantly urban. It comprises estuarine wetlands, small freshwater wetlands, and some indigenous plantings. The most abundant species are mangrove, oioi, and sea rush. No rare or uncommon plant species have been recorded.

### Fauna

Australasian bittern (Threatened-Nationally Endangered in Miskelly *et al.* 2008), banded rail (At Risk-Naturally Uncommon in Miskelly *et al.* 2008), and North Island fernbird (At Risk-Declining in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) were recorded in 1990 (Owen 1993).

### Condition/Pressures

Owen (1993): recorded stock access, extensive reclamation and drainage works, a range of weeds, and stormwater run-off. Wildland Consultants (2005e) recorded the following weed species on site: arum lily, wild ginger, she-oak, Taiwan cherry, tradescantia, black wattle, Chinese privet, Japanese honeysuckle, grey willow, blackberry, brush wattle, gorse, and pampas.

Matua saltmarsh has been the subject of an intensive saltwater paspalum

control programme.

Matua saltmarsh is the subject of a community restoration project which has carried out weed control and reduced the distribution and abundance of pampas and wild ginger (and also probably of other species). Wild ginger, gorse, and brush wattle are present on the railway embankment and on the margins of the drains, especially towards the centre of the saltmarsh. In contrast, weed control does not appear to have been undertaken in Yorke Park, and grey willow and pampas remain common (Wildland Consultants 2005e). A walkway is planned by Tauranga City Council for the northern shoreline.

**Tauranga City** 1  
**Council Category**

<b>Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)</b>		
<b>Significance Assessment</b>		
<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	M
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	H
	3.3	M
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	H
	Diversity and Pattern	3.7
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	M
	3.10	L
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	M
	3.12	M
	3.13	M
* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.		
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		
<b>Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level</b>		
Regional		
<b>Significance Justification</b>	Matua Estuary-Yorke Park is a substantial site supporting a diverse range of vegetation types, including representative examples of indigenous estuarine wetlands and small examples of freshwater wetlands. A wide range of pest plants are present, but the effects of these and other pressures are being alleviated by active restoration efforts. One Threatened and two At Risk bird species have been recorded here.	

**Notes** This site is ranked as a Category 1<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report and is the subject of a community-led restoration project (Wildland Consultants 2005e).

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

This site was identified as a site of regional significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

Also identified as a Category 1 natural heritage site in the Tauranga Ecological District (Beadel and Shaw 2000).

## **References**

Owen 1993; Beadel 1994a; Beadel and Shaw 2000; Wildland Consultants 2005e, 2008a.

# WAIKAREAO ESTUARY 1

**SES Number** 3  
**Grid Reference (NZMG)** E2787878 N6386652  
**Status** Protected (TCC reserve) and unprotected parts  
**Site Area** 39.6 ha  
**Altitudinal Range** <20 m asl  
**Bioclimatic Zone** Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Palustrine	Grey willow forest.	Wetland
Palustrine	Grey willow-manuka-(ti kouka)/raupo-pampas treeland.	Wetland
Palustrine	<i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> -manuka-pampas shrubland.	Wetland
Estuarine	Mangrove scrub and shrubland.	Intertidal flat
Terrestrial	Mamaku-tarata-Taiwan cherry-kohuhu-titoki-karaka-makomako scrub.	Hillslope
Estuarine	Pampas-harakeke-manuka- <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> /raupo-bracken-( <i>Baumea articulata</i> ) shrub-tussockland.	Wetland
Estuarine	Marsh ribbonwood/oioi-sea rush rushland.	Intertidal flat
Palustrine	Manuka/oioi-sea rush-marsh ribbonwood rushland. (Beadel 1994c, Wildland Consultants 2005e)	Wetland

## Vegetation and Indigenous Flora

Waikareao Estuary 1 is within Tauranga City and surrounded by urban development. To the south, it is adjacent to Waikareao Estuary 2. Waikareao Estuary 1 comprises saline wetlands and freshwater wetlands on the northwestern side of Waikareao Estuary. The freshwater wetlands are dominated by grey willow. At the north of the site there is a hillside of mixed indigenous-exotic scrub. Regionally uncommon species present include *Olearia solandri*, *Austrostipa stipoides*, *Tetraria capillaris*, and *Gahnia xanthocarpa* (Beadel 1994).

## Fauna

Banded rail (At Risk-Naturally Uncommon in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) and North Island fernbird (At Risk-Declining in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) were recorded in 1990 (Owen 1993), and North Island fernbird was recorded in 2002 and 2005 (Wildland Consultants 2002a; 2005e). Waders roost along the saltmarsh edges, especially on neap tides (Owen *et al.* 2006).

## Condition/Pressures

The following weed species are present within the site: plectranthus, reed sweetgrass, ladder fern, climbing asparagus, silver poplar, arum lily, wild ginger, moth plant, she-oak, Taiwan cherry, tradescantia, black wattle, tree privet, Chinese privet, grey willow, brush wattle, gorse and pampas (Wildland Consultants 2005e).

In this site the distribution of wild ginger and tradescantia has increased over recent years. Grey willow and Taiwan cherry remain abundant and widespread, and are canopy dominants on the northern, landward, side of the site. Invasive weeds present on the margin of the wetland and at the

base of the hillslope include pampas, Japanese honeysuckle, ladder fern, Chinese privet, arum lily, and reed sweetgrass (Wildland Consultants 2005e).

**Tauranga City** 1  
**Council Category**

<b>Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)</b>		
<b>Significance Assessment</b>		
<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	H
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	M
	3.3	M
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	H
Diversity and Pattern	3.7	H
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	H
	3.10	M
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	M
	3.12	M
	3.13	M
* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.		
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		
<b>Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level</b>		
Regional		
<b>Significance Justification</b>	This is a substantial, relatively compact site with diverse indigenous vegetation. The large number of weed species present probably reflects its urban setting, as do the impacts of direct human activity. There are current records of two At Risk bird species at this site.	

**Notes** This site is ranked as a Category 1<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of regional significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region, and was identified as a Category 1 natural heritage site in the Tauranga Ecological District (Beadel and Shaw 2000), and the vegetation was identified as being of District significance in Beadel (1994a).

**References** Owen 1993; Beadel 1994a; Beadel and Shaw 2000; Wildland Consultants 2002a; Wildland Consultants 2005e, 2008a; Owen *et al.* 2006.

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## WAIMAPU ESTUARY

<b>SES Number</b>	4
<b>Grid Reference (NZMG)</b>	E2787701 N6381212
<b>Status</b>	Protected (TCC reserve) and unprotected parts
<b>Site Area</b>	51.8 ha
<b>Altitudinal Range</b>	<20 m asl
<b>Bioclimatic Zone</b>	Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Estuarine	Mangrove scrub and shrubland.	Intertidal flat
Terrestrial	Puriri/mamaku-mahoe/kawakawa treeland.	Hillslope
Terrestrial	Brush wattle-mamaku-ti kouka forest.	Hillslope
Palustrine	Grey willow-manuka forest.	Wetland
Palustrine	Grey willow forest.	Wetland
Palustrine	Manuka scrub.	Wetland
Estuarine	<i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> shrubland.	Intertidal flat
Palustrine	Grey willow/pampas-harakeke tussockland.	Wetland
Palustrine	Harakeke-pampas-raupo-gorse- <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> /sea rush-oioi-(marsh ribbonwood)-( <i>Baumea articulata</i> ) shrub-tussockland.	Wetland
Estuarine	Sea rush-harakeke-marsh ribbonwood- <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> tussockland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Sea rush-mangrove-oioi-marsh ribbonwood tussockland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Sea rush-oioi tussockland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Oioi- <i>Baumea articulata</i> rushland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Oioi rushland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Oioi- <i>Baumea articulata</i> -marsh ribbonwood rushland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Oioi-marsh ribbonwood shrub-rushland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Oioi searush sedgeland	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Arrow grass herbfield.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	( <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> )-(manuka)/ <i>Baumea articulata</i> -mangrove-oioi-(sea rush)/arrow grass herbfield.	Intertidal flat
Palustrine	Grey willow/ <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> forest.	Wetland
Estuarine	Open water (Beadel 1992a, Wildland Consultants 2005e)	Estuarine River

### Vegetation and Indigenous Flora

This site is located at the southern end of Waimapu Estuary and includes the outlet of Waimapu Stream. It is dominated by saline wetlands which include mangrove, sea rush, oioi, marsh ribbonwood, and arrow grass. There are also freshwater wetlands which include grey willow, harakeke, *Coprosma propinqua* subsp. *propinqua*, and raupo. There is a small area of puriri treeland on a hillside near the northern tip of the site and a high quality example of *Coprosma propinqua* subsp. *propinqua* shrubland towards the southern end of the site. One regionally uncommon species is present - *Tetraria capillaris*.

**Fauna** Banded rail (At Risk-Naturally Uncommon in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) and North Island fernbird (At Risk-Declining in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) were recorded in 1990 (Owen 1993; and North Island fernbird was recorded in 2002 and 2005 (Wildland Consultants 2002a and 2005e). White-fronted tern (Threatened-Nationally Vulnerable in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) and several common coastal bird species were also recorded at the site in 2002 (Wildland Consultants 2002a).

**Condition/Pressures** The following weed species are currently present within the site: arum lily, wild ginger, Taiwan cherry, tree privet, Chinese privet, Japanese honeysuckle, woolly nightshade, grey willow, blackberry, brush wattle, gorse and pampas. (Wildland Consultants 2005e)

The abundance and distribution of brush wattle and Japanese honeysuckle increased between 2000 and 2005. No change was detected in the abundance and distribution of grey willow, tree privet, and pampas (Wildland Consultants 2005e).

The following activities have impacted on the site: dumping of organic waste has had a minor negative impact, drainage has had a moderate minor negative impact and weed control has had a minor positive impact (Wildland Consultants 2005e).

**Tauranga City** 1  
**Council Category**

<b>Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)</b>		
<b>Significance Assessment</b>		
<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	H
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	M
	3.3	M
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	H
	Diversity and Pattern	3.7
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	H
	3.10	H
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	M
	3.12	M
	3.13	M
* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.		
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		
<b>Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level</b>		
National		
<b>Significance Justification</b>	Waimapu Estuary is a relatively large site which comprises a representative example of the estuarine and freshwater vegetation in Tauranga Ecological District. It contains the best example of coastal <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp.	

*propinqua* shrubland in the Bay of Plenty. One Threatened and two At Risk bird species have been recorded here.

- Notes** This site is ranked as a Category 1<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report, and was identified as a Category 1 natural heritage site in the Tauranga Ecological District (Beadel and Shaw 2000). It was also identified as a site of national significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).
- References** Owen 1993; Beadel and Shaw 2000; Wildland Consultants 2002a, 2005e, 2008a.

---

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## POIKE

<b>SES Number</b>	5
<b>Grid Reference (NZMG)</b>	E2788525 N6380902
<b>Status</b>	Protected (TCC reserve) and unprotected parts
<b>Site Area</b>	30.8 ha
<b>Altitudinal Range</b>	0-40 m asl
<b>Bioclimatic Zone</b>	Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Palustrine	Grey willow forest.	Wetland
Palustrine	Grey willow-manuka forest.	Wetland
Palustrine	Manuka scrub.	Wetland
Terrestrial	(Wattle)/mamaku-Japanese honeysuckle-gorse scrub.	Alluvial flat
Palustrine	<i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> shrubland.	Wetland
Terrestrial	Manuka-harakeke-toetoe shrubland.	Alluvial flat
Estuarine	Mangrove scrub and shrubland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Pampas tussockland.	Alluvial flat
Palustrine	Grey willow/pampas-harakeke tussockland.	Wetland
Estuarine	Oioi-sea rush-(marsh ribbonwood) rushland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Oioi-sea rush rushland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Oioi-marsh ribbonwood-harakeke- <i>Baumea juncea</i> rushland.	Intertidal flat
Terrestrial	Brush wattle-mamaku-ti kouka forest. (Wildland Consultants 2005e)	Hillslope

### Vegetation and Indigenous Flora

This site is located on the south side of Waimapu Estuary. It includes estuarine wetlands and a grey willow-dominated wetland in a gully which flows into the estuary. The saline wetlands are dominated by searush and oioi, and pampas is common, particularly on the margins and along drains. Grey willow dominates the freshwater wetlands which also include indigenous species such as manuka, *Coprosma propinqua* subsp. *propinqua*, harakeke, and toetoe. No rare or uncommon plant species have been recorded.

### Fauna

Banded rail (classed as At Risk-Naturally Uncommon in Miskelly *et al.* 2008), spotless crane (classed as At Risk-Relict in Miskelly *et al.* 2008), and North Island fernbird (classed as At Risk-Declining in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) were recorded in 1990 (Owen 1993) and North Island fernbird was recorded again in 2002 and 2005 (Wildland Consultants 2002a and 2005e). White-fronted tern (classed as At Risk-Declining in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) and several common coastal birds were recorded in 2002 (Wildland Consultants 2002a).

### Condition/Pressures

The following weed species are currently present within the site: *Pinus* spp., tree privet, Chinese privet, Japanese honeysuckle, woolly nightshade, grey willow, blackberry, brush wattle, gorse and pampas (Wildland Consultants 2005e). *Spartina* is present (K. Owen pers. comm.). The abundance and distribution of pampas and Japanese honeysuckle have increased in the site in recent years. Grey willow, tree privet, and radiata pine may also have spread (Wildland Consultants 2005e).

<b>Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)</b>		
<b>Significance Assessment</b>		
<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	M
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	M
	3.3	M
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	H
Diversity and Pattern	3.7	M
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	M
	3.10	L
	3.11	M
Viability and Sustainability	3.12	M
	3.13	M
	* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.	
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		
<b>Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level</b>		
Regional		
<b>Significance Justification</b>	This site is of regional significance because of the diverse vegetation communities present in combination with other features, including its large size and close proximity to the Waimapu Estuary site. It is a moderate-sized, diverse example of the estuarine and freshwater wetland vegetation of Tauranga Harbour. It supports at least four At Risk bird species. This site is dissected at one end by a state highway. Pest plant infestations appear to be increasing in extent/density.	

**Notes** This site is ranked as a Category 2<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of regional significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

**References** Owen 1993; Wildland Consultants 2002a, 2005e, 2008a.

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## WAITAO STREAM

<b>SES Number</b>	6
<b>Grid Reference (NZMG)</b>	E2795259 N6382566
<b>Status</b>	Protected (TCC reserve) and unprotected parts
<b>Site Area</b>	51.2 ha
<b>Altitudinal Range</b>	<20 m asl
<b>Bioclimatic Zone</b>	Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Palustrine	Grey willow forest.	Wetland
Palustrine	Ti kouka/grey willow-manuka forest.	Wetland
Estuarine/Palustrine	Manuka scrub.	Intertidal flat, wetland
Estuarine	Mangrove shrubland and loamfield.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Sea rush tussockland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Oioi-marsh ribbonwood shrub-rushland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Oioi-sea rush rushland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	<i>Bolboschoenus fluviatilis</i> reedland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Sea rush-oioi-mangrove tussockland. (Beadel 1992a, Wildland Consultants 2005e)	Intertidal flat

### Vegetation and Indigenous Flora

This site is located at the mouth of the Waitao Stream in the Rangataua Estuary of Tauranga Harbour. Much of the site comprises saline wetlands of sea rush, oioi, and mangrove. Towards the northern end of the site there is a freshwater wetland of ti kouka/grey willow-manuka forest. No rare or uncommon plant species have been recorded at this site.

### Fauna

Banded rail (At Risk-Naturally Uncommon in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) and North Island fernbird (At Risk-Declining in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) were recorded in 1990 (Owen 1993) and in 2002 (Wildland Consultants 2002a).

### Condition/Pressures

Stock access; drainage works; *Spartina* and other weeds were present in 1990 (Owen 1993). Weeds that were recorded in 2005 include banana passionfruit, moth plant, she-oak, black wattle, *Pinus* spp., woolly nightshade, grey willow, blackberry, brush wattle, gorse and pampas (Wildland Consultants 2005e). Pampas is present on the margins of the site and on raised areas, such as where spoil from drains has been dumped. Grey willow is common in one vegetation type and pines are common. She-oak is established in the sea rush tussockland (Wildland Consultants 2005e).

### Tauranga City Council Category

1

<b>Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)</b>		
<b>Significance Assessment</b>		
<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	M
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	M
	3.3	M
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	H
Diversity and Pattern	3.7	M
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	M
	3.10	L
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	M
	3.12	M
	3.13	M
* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.		
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		
<b>Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level</b>		
Regional		
<b>Significance Justification</b>	Waitao Stream is a substantial site, with a diverse range of vegetation types that are representative of the Tauranga Ecological District. It is also valuable as a protective buffer to the nationally significant Te Maunga wader roost. Several recent surveys have recorded two At Risk bird species.	

**Notes** Ranked as a Category 1<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. Identified as a Category 1 natural heritage site in the Tauranga Ecological District (Beadel and Shaw 2000). This site was identified as a site of regional significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006). Iwi and NIWA are working to restore the Waitao River. This site forms the eastern/western edge of the 'Otago' Corridor (Environment Bay of Plenty 2006) ranked as being second Priority Level 2 (Wildland Consultants 2007d).

**References** Owen 1993; Beadel and Shaw 2000; Wildland Consultants 2002a, 2005e, 2008a.

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report and criteria for assigning categories are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories.

# MAUAO 1

**SES Number** 7  
**Grid Reference (NZMG)** E2790133 N6391728  
**Status** Returned to iwi as part of Treaty Claim but still “managed” by TCC.  
**Site Area** 43.3 ha  
**Altitudinal Range** 0-120 m asl  
**Bioclimatic Zone** Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Terrestrial	Pohutukawa forest	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	(Pohutukawa)-(rewarewa)/mamaku-mahoe treefernland	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	Mamaku-brush wattle-(Taiwan cherry)-(mahoe)-(hawthorn) treefernland	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	Pohutukawa treeland	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	Pohutukawa-rewarewa/akepiro-mingimingi-hangehange-manuka-karamu-mamaku treeland.	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	(Pohutukawa)-(kanuka)-(rewarewa)-(totara)/mahoe-whauwhaupaku-manuka-karamu-hawthorn-mingimingi scrub	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	Gorse-manuka-Spanish heath-pampas scrub	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	Gorse-Spanish heath-pampas-bracken-smilax scrub	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	Mahoe-karamu-mamaku-hangehange scrub	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	Manuka-kanuka-mingimingi-(pohutukawa) scrub	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	Mapou-mingimingi-mahoe-karamu scrub	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	Ngaio scrub	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	Pohutukawa/gorse-pampas scrub	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	Pohutukawa/mingimingi-akepiro-hangehange scrub	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	Totara-mahoe-hawthorn scrub	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	Akeake-manuka-tarata-kohuhu-ti kouka-ngaio-koromiko-harakeke scrub	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	Gorse-pampas tussock-shrubland	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	Manuka-(pohutukawa)-(akeake)-(mingimingi) shrubland	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	Whau-karamu-ngaio-(tarata)-(manuka)-(pohutukawa)-(taupata)/kikuyu grass-cocksfoot shrubland	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	Pohutukawa/mahoe-mingimingi-hawthorn-kawakawa-gorse shrubland	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	Pampas/gorse-Spanish heath-manuka-harakeke/exotic grasses shrubland rockland	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	Manuka-harakeke-ngaio-pohutukawa/exotic grasses shrubland	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	Dead pohutukawa/dead small trees/bracken-gorse-hangehange-pampas-woolly nightshade shrubland	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	Pohutukawa/bracken fernland	Very steep hill
Terrestrial	(Manuka)/cocksfoot-paspalum-bidibid grassland	Very steep hill

(Wildland Consultants 2005e)

## Vegetation and Indigenous Flora

Mauao 1 includes most of the non-pasture vegetation on Mauao (the remainder is within site Mauao 2). The lower slopes of this site include pohutkawa forest and treeland, and there are smaller examples of these vegetation types on the upper slopes of the site. The remainder of the site comprises predominantly secondary indigenous vegetation, some of which has a relatively high component of exotic species. This is especially true of the north-facing slopes where pampas, gorse, and Spanish heath are common. Also on the northern slopes, there are areas of planted indigenous scrub, some of which has been established in the wake of recent fires.

One nationally threatened species is present on Mauao - *Pimelea tomentosa*. Several regionally uncommon species present include *Schoenus apogon*, *Psilotum nudum*, *Lepidosperma laterale*, *Rytidosperma unarede*, *Trisetum arduanum*, *Astelia banksii*, *Tetraria capillaris*, *Zoysia pauciflora*, and *Oxalis rubens*.

Other species with a limited distribution in Tauranga Ecological District are present on Mauao. Of special note is mangemange (*Lygodium articulatum*) (Beadel 2004).

Other threatened or local uncommon species which have been recorded from Mauao, or near Mauao, in the past are *Lepidium oleraceum* and *Atriplex hollowayi*, (both classed as Threatened-Nationally Vulnerable in de Lange *et al.* 2009), *Vittadinia australis*, *Paspalum orbiculare* (classed as At Risk-Declining in de Lange *et al.* 2009), and *Wahlenbergia littoricola* subsp. *vericosa*. Reintroduction of these species could be considered in the future if suitable habitat can be created/maintained.

## Fauna

Northern blue penguins (At Risk-Declining in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) breed in good numbers on the Mauao coast (OSNZ 2006). Shore skinks are present but at low abundance (John Heaphy pers. comm. 2006).

There is a mainland grey-faced petrel (*Pterodroma macroptera*) breeding colony of about 200 pairs on Mauao which is monitored by members of OSNZ since 1989 with DOC assistance. From a high point of around 36 chicks fledging per season in 1999-2002, there has been a dramatic decline due to pest impacts, with no fledged chicks in the 2005-2006 breeding season (Cuming 2006) but has since recovered to produce further chicks this season (K. Owen pers. comm.).

The land snail *Succinea archeyi* (Chronically Threatened, Serious Decline) is a rare inhabitant of these foreshore dunes (Powell 1933).

## Condition/Pressures

The following weed species are present within the site: boneseed, mignonette (Madeira vine), climbing asparagus, smilax, evergreen buckthorn, wild ginger, *Pinus* spp., tree privet, Japanese honeysuckle, woolly nightshade, brush wattle, gorse and pampas (Wildland Consultants 2005e).

Tauranga City Council is restoring and monitoring the vegetation on Mauao (Wildland Consultants 2004d and 2005e). Since 2000 weed control has reduced the distribution and/or abundance of wild ginger, pampas, gorse, and boneseed. Pampas and gorse remain widespread but are less dominant than they were in 2000. Other invasive species that have not been controlled include climbing asparagus, Japanese honeysuckle, smilax, wild ginger, evergreen buckthorn, mignonette vine, blue morning glory, Spanish heath

and loquat (Wildland Consultants 2005e).

The following activities/mechanisms cause negative impacts: weeds, animal pests, recreation (tracks) and track erosion, and blasting to remove rocks has caused damage to vegetation downslope of the rock faces.

**Tauranga City** 1  
**Council Category**

<b>Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)</b>		
<b>Significance Assessment</b>		
<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	H
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	H
	3.3	M
	3.4	M
	3.5	M
	3.6	H
Diversity and Pattern	3.7	H
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	M
	3.10	M
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	M
	3.12	M
	3.13	M
* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.		
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		
<b>Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level</b>		
National		
<b>Significance Justification</b>	This site encompasses a large portion of the eroded Mauao (Mt Maunganui) rhyolite dome, which is a nationally important geological feature (Kenny and Hayward 1996), and includes good examples of remnant pohutukawa forest and secondary mixed forest on volcanic hard coast. Pohutukawa forest was once common in Tauranga Ecological District, but has now been greatly reduced in extent and only small areas remain (for example Mauao, Kauri Point, Ngakautuakina Point, Matakana Point, Tuapiro, Bowentown Heads, Motuhoa Island). Two Threatened and one At Risk plant species have been recorded here. Significant pressure exerted by weeds and fire are being actively managed. In addition the site is habitat for an At Risk bird species (northern blue penguin), and notable for being one of a few mainland breeding sites of grey-faced petrel in the Bay of Plenty Region. It is also habitat for a Chronically Threatened land snail.	

**Notes** This site is ranked as a Category 1<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of national significance

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

Mauao has high historic, archaeological, and heritage values. This site has considerable potential as an ecological restoration site (see Wildland Consultants 2004a).

The site forms part of the Smartgrowth 'Coastal strip' corridor, ranked as being highest priority (Wildland Consultants 2007c and 2007d).

## References

Kenny and Hayward 1996; Beadel and Shaw 2000; Wildland Consultants 2004a, 2005e, 2008a; OSNZ 2006; Beadel 1994a; Bibby *et al.* 1999; Cuming 2006.

## MOTUOTAU ISLAND

**SES Number** 8  
**Grid Reference (NZMG)** E2792105 N6391820  
**Status** Protected (DOC Motuotau Island Scenic Reserve)  
**Site Area** 2.4 ha  
**Altitudinal Range** 0-40 m asl  
**Bioclimatic Zone** Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Terrestrial	Pohutukawa forest. (Wildland Consultants 2005e)	Marine island

### Vegetation and Indigenous Flora

Motuotau is located approximately 800 m offshore of Mount Maunganui beach. The canopy is dense pohutukawa. Coastal mahoe, which is regionally uncommon in the Bay of Plenty, is present on Motuotau (Wildland Consultants 2000a). Two other regionally uncommon species are also present - *Asplenium flaccidum* subsp. *aurakiense* (NZFRI 19141; collected by Bruce Clarkson in 1990) and *Einadia trigonos* subsp. *trigonos*. A small population of parapara is present and regenerating on the island, planted in the early 1990s, with seed sourced from nearby Karewa Island.

### Fauna

Reef herons (*Egretta sacra*) (Threatened-Nationally Vulnerable in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) are known to feed around this island and also nest here. The outlying rocks are nesting sites for red-billed gulls (Threatened-Nationally Vulnerable in Miskelly *et al.* 2008). There are also grey-faced petrel and common diving petrel nesting colonies here (John Heaphy pers. comm. 2006, K. Owen pers comm.).

### Condition/Pressures

Infestations of ivy, banana passionfruit, *Asparagus* sp., woolly nightshade, and wild ginger were recorded in 1992, Small infestations of boxthorn are present. These, and a range of other weed species, are currently either eradicated or subject to ongoing control by DOC.

### Tauranga City Council Category

1

**Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)**

**Significance Assessment**

<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	H
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	H
	3.3	M
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	L
	Diversity and Pattern	3.7
Naturalness	3.8	H
Ecological Context	3.9	L
	3.10	H
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	H
	3.12	H
	3.13	M

\* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.

\*\* H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.

**Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level**

National

<b>Significance Justification</b>	<p>This site is a good quality example of indigenous vegetation/habitat that is under-represented nationally (i.e. coastal pohutukawa forest) and that is representative of the ecological character of the Region.</p> <p>Motuotau is a representative example of a forest type which has been greatly reduced in extent throughout its natural range, and which typifies a major component of the ecological character of the Bay of Plenty coastal environment. A range of pest plant species with the potential to alter the natural character of the site are present and are being controlled. Motuotau is habitat of a regionally uncommon plant species, and breeding habitat for two Threatened-Nationally Vulnerable bird species.</p>
-----------------------------------	--

**Notes** This site is ranked as a Category 1<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report and was identified as a Category 1 natural heritage site in the Tauranga Ecological District (Beadel and Shaw 2000). This site was identified as a site of national significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

The site forms part of the Smartgrowth 'Coastal strip' corridor, ranked as being highest priority (Wildland Consultants 2007c and 2007d).

**References** Beadel and Shaw 2000; Wildland Consultants 2005e; Wildland Consultants 2000a, 2008a.

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## OTIRA SAND DUNES

<b>SES Number</b>	9
<b>Grid Reference (NZMG)</b>	E2797575, N6385566
<b>Status</b>	Protected (TCC reserve) and unprotected parts
<b>Site Area</b>	57.6 ha
<b>Altitudinal Range</b>	0-2 m asl
<b>Bioclimatic Zone</b>	Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Terrestrial	Pingao-spinifex sandfield	Incipient foredune
Terrestrial	Spinifex sandfield	Incipient foredune
Terrestrial	Spinifex-pingao/ <i>Calystegia soldanella</i> grassland	Incipient and established foredune
Terrestrial	Pohuehue- <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> vineland	Established foredune and transgressing dunefield
Terrestrial	<i>Carex testacea</i> -pohuehue- <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> sedgeland	Transgressing dunefield
Terrestrial	Bracken-pohuehue fernland	Established foredune and transgressing dunefield
Terrestrial	Periwinkle vineland	Transgressing dunefield
Terrestrial	Kikuyu grassland	Transgressing dunefield
Terrestrial	Knot-root bristle-grass grassland (Wildland Consultants 2008a)	Transgressing dunefield

### Vegetation and Indigenous Flora

Otira Sand Dunes include two large dune complexes linked by foredune vegetation in front of the two areas of residential housing which are established on the site of a transgressive dunefield. The larger areas contain a sequence of large stabilised dunes from broad incipient foredunes bearing spinifex and pingao (classed as At Risk-Relict in de Lange *et al.* 2009) through the leeward face and swale of established foredune bearing *Carex testacea* and onto the transgressive dunefield which is clothed in a dense mat of pohuehue and *Ficinia nodosa*, with bracken increasing in abundance as distance from the shoreline increases.

The dune system is relatively stable, with the exception of several large blowouts, possibly the result of human-induced reduction of vegetative cover associated with unofficial walking tracks, are present.

Shore spurge had been planted by Coast Care (Wildland Consultants 2005e) but was not observed during this study. Eight plants of sand pimelea (*Pimelea villosa*) (classed as At Risk-Declining in de Lange *et al.* 2009) are present just behind crest of established foredune. This is apparently the first record of sand pimelea on the Otira dunes, although a population is known approximately 4 kilometres further south in the Papamoa dunes (Beadel 1992). Only two populations of sand pimelea were known for the ecological district in 1993, from Papamoa and Matakana. Pimelea was recorded at Bowentown in 1983, but may now have gone from that site. *Ozothamnus leptophyllus* also occurs at in the Otira sand dunes. Pingao (classed as At Risk-Relict in de Lange *et al.* 2009) is widespread as scattered individuals along the incipient foredune. *Oxalis rubens* and *Zoysia pauciflora* (both

regionally uncommon plant species, as per Beadel 2006b) are present.

## **Fauna**

There are scattered populations of katipo spider (*Latrodectus katipo*) (Chronically Threatened, Serious Decline) within the dunes (B. Christensen pers. comm.).

New Zealand pipit (classed as At Risk-Declining in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) and variable oystercatcher (classed as At Risk-Recovering in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) were recorded at this site during the current study. Variable oystercatcher feed along the beach. *Succinea archeyi* (Chronically Threatened, Serious Decline) have been reported at this site in the past.

The fauna described for this site does not constitute an exhaustive account. A wide variety of indigenous invertebrates will be present in microsites with indigenous habitats, including, but not limited to, Crustaceans, Myriopods, Arachnids, and Hexapods including Diplurans, Proturans, Collembolids, and Insecta. Of indigenous vertebrates, only shore skink is likely to occur.

## **Condition/Pressures**

Detailed weed distribution maps were produced for this site in summer 2002, and formed the basis for a Tauranga City Council 10 year environmental weed management plan (Wildland Consultants 2002b).

Weed species present include *Agapanthus praecox*, *Banksia integrifolia*, blackberry, black wattle, brush wattle, Cape ivy, Chinese privet, climbing dock, evergreen buckthorn, gorse, Japanese spindle tree, kikuyu, lupin, marram, moth plant, pampas, periwinkle, smilax, South African ice plant, tradescantia, and ladder fern.

A 2005 study did not detect any change in weed abundance and distribution between 2000 and 2005 (Wildland Consultants 2005e). In part this may be because weeds are scattered throughout the site at relatively low densities, and it would take a large change for any variation to be detected in the abundance and distribution scores. Exotic grasses are present throughout the site but are more common towards its western end. Lupins are scattered on the foredune. This species has a potentially high negative impact because it is a nitrogen-fixer, which alters the nutrient status of the substrate and may create habitat suitable for other adventive species, however its numbers are kept low by a fungal pathogen that has been present in the lupin population since the 1980s (Wildland Consultants 2005e).

The following activities impacted on the site during the period of 2000-2005: pedestrian and vehicle tracks, dumping of organic and inorganic waste has had a minor negative impact and animal pest and weed control has had a minor positive impact on the site (Wildland Consultants 2005e).

Parts of the site are bounded by residential housing on the foredune, and the gardens of some of these properties are encroaching into the site, resulting in indigenous vegetation being damaged and/or replaced by exotic species.

## **Tauranga City Council Category**

1

**Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)**

**Significance Assessment**

<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	H
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	H
	3.3	M
	3.4	H
	3.5	M
	3.6	H
	Diversity and Pattern	3.7
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	H
	3.10	M
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	H
	3.12	M
	3.13	M

\* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.

\*\* H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.

**Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level**

**Regional**

**Significance Justification**

A relatively good quality large example of indigenous vegetation or habitat for indigenous species which is representative of the ecological character of the Region, and is a nationally uncommon habitat. Pingao and sand pimelea are present, shore spurge has been planted at the site (all classed as At Risk plant species in de Lange *et al.* 2009).

The Otira Sand Dunes site comprises a much wider strip of representative sand dune vegetation type than the adjacent Shark Alley dunes. Accordingly it has greater resilience and buffering from encroaching human impacts, and this is reflected in the condition of its natural character. Incipient weed invasion along much of the inland margin, and in places within the dune system itself. Large expanse of dunes in some areas.

Two At Risk bird species have been recorded at this site, as well as a Chronically Threatened land snail. This site is notable for the existence of scattered populations of the black katipo (Chronically Threatened, Serious Decline).

**Notes**

This site is ranked as a Category 1<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report and was identified as a Category 1 natural heritage site in the Tauranga Ecological District (Beadel and Shaw 2000b). This site was identified as a site of regional significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

Survey for native lizards and butterflies is recommended.

**References**

Beadel 1995b; Beadel and Shaw 2000b; Wildland Consultants 2002b; Wildland Consultants 2005e, 2008a.

## PAPAMOA SAND DUNES

<b>SES Number</b>	10
<b>Grid Reference (NZMG)</b>	E2801791, N6383328
<b>Status</b>	Protected (TCC reserve - Papamoa Beach Reserve 2)
<b>Site Area</b>	63.0 ha
<b>Altitudinal Range</b>	0-2 m asl
<b>Bioclimatic Zone</b>	Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Terrestrial	Spinifex-pingao/ <i>Calystegia soldanella</i> grassland	Duneland
Terrestrial	<i>Muehlenbeckia complexa</i> -spinifex vineland <i>Carex testacea</i> -pohuehue- <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> sedgeland	Duneland
Terrestrial	<i>Ficinia nodosa</i> -pohuehue sedgeland	Duneland
Terrestrial	Pohuehue-bracken vineland	Duneland
Terrestrial	Pohuehue-kikuyu vineland	Duneland
Terrestrial	Cocksfoot grassland	Duneland

(Wildland Consultants 2008a)

### Vegetation and Indigenous Flora

Papmoa sand dunes are a single large dune complex containing a sequence of large stabilised dunes from broad incipient foredunes bearing spinifex and pingao (classed as At Risk-Relict in de Lange *et al.* 2009) through leeward face and swale of established foredune with *Carex testacea* and onto the well vegetated transgressive dunefield which is covered by a dense mat of pohuehue and *Ficinia nodosa*, with bracken increasing in abundance as distance from the shoreline increases. The dune system is relatively stable, with the exception of several large blowouts, possibly the result of human-induced reduction of vegetative cover associated with informal walking tracks, are present. Pingao, sand tussock (hinarepe) (classed as At Risk-Declining in de Lange *et al.* 2009), and sand pimelea (classed as At Risk-Declining in de Lange *et al.* 2009) were recorded within the site in 2000, 2002 and 2005 (Wildland Consultants 2005e). *Coprosma acerosa* was observed within the site during the current study, but sand tussock and sand pimelea were not. The sand tussock population comprised one plant in 1993 (Tait 1993), and the sand pimelea population comprises only two patches, 4 × 4 m, and 1.2 × 0.9 m approximately 3 m apart (Wildland Consultants 2005e). *Oxalis rubens* and *Zoysia pauciflora* (both regionally uncommon plant species, as per Beadel 2006b) are present on dunes.

### Fauna

NZ pipit (classed as At Risk-Declining in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) and variable oystercatcher (classed as At Risk-Recovering in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) are present. Variable oystercatcher feed and roost along the beach. This site has scattered populations of the black katipo spider (Chronically Threatened, Serious Decline) (Brendon Christensen pers. comm.).

*Succinea archeyi* (land snail; Acutely Threatened, Serious Decline) have been reported in the past, and may still be present today. Native lizards and butterflies are likely to be present.

The fauna described for this site does not constitute an exhaustive account. A wide variety of indigenous invertebrates will be present in microsites with

indigenous habitats, including, but not limited to, Crustaceans, Myriopods, Arachnids, and Hexapods including Diplurans, Proturans, Collembolids, and Insecta. Of indigenous vertebrates, only shore skink is likely to occur.

**Condition/Pressures**

Detailed weed distribution maps were produced for this site in summer 2002, and formed the basis for a Tauranga City Council 10 year environmental weed management plan (Wildland Consultants 2002b).

Weed species present include *Agapanthus praecox*, blackberry, black wattle, Chinese privet, climbing dock, evergreen buckthorn, German ivy, Japanese honeysuckle, Japanese spindle tree, kikuyu, lupin, pampas marram, periwinkle, silver poplar, smilax, South African ice plant, Taiwan cherry, tradescantia, and ladder fern.

A 2005 study found that the abundance and distribution of pampas and Japanese spindle tree had decreased, and that climbing dock may have increased in this site between 2000 and 2005. There is a wide variety of exotic species within the parts of the site that are adjacent to the road including Norfolk pine, freesia, cape spurge and nasturtium (Wildland Consultants 2005e).

The following activities impacted on the site during the period of 2000-2008. Pedestrian and vehicle tracks and dumping of organic waste have had a moderate negative impact; the dumping of inorganic waste has had a minor negative impact and planting has had a minor positive impact on the site (Wildland Consultants 2005e, this study).

**Tauranga City  
Council Category**

1

**Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)**

**Significance Assessment**

<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	H
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	H
	3.3	H
	3.4	H
	3.5	M
	3.6	H
	Diversity and Pattern	3.7
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	M
	3.10	M
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	H
	3.12	M
	3.13	H

\* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.

\*\* H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.

**Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level**

**Regional**

**Significance Justification**

A relatively large, good quality, diverse example of sand dune vegetation of the Bay of Plenty. Three At Risk plant species are present.

The Papamoa Sand Dunes site comprises a relatively wide strip of representative sand dune vegetation. Accordingly it has greater resilience and buffering from encroaching human impacts, and this is reflected in the condition of its natural character. One of the few sites for natural populations of sand tussock (hinarepe) in the western Bay of Plenty.

Two At Risk bird species have been recorded at this site, as well as a Chronically Threatened land snail. This site is notable for the existence of scattered populations of the black katipo, (Chronically Threatened, Serious Decline) (B. Christensen pers. comm.).

**Notes**

This site is ranked as a Category 1<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report and was identified as a Category 1 natural heritage site in the Tauranga Ecological District (Beadel and Shaw 2000b). This site was identified as a site of regional significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

A survey for native lizards and butterflies is recommended.

**References**

Beadel 1995b; Beadel and Shaw 2000b; Wildland Consultants 2002, 2005e, 2008a.

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## KAITUNA SAND DUNES AND WETLAND

<b>SES Number</b>	11
<b>Grid Reference (NZMG)</b>	E2807291, N6380265
<b>Status</b>	Unprotected
<b>Site Area</b>	67.8 ha
<b>Altitudinal Range</b>	0-1m asl
<b>Bioclimatic Zone</b>	Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Terrestrial	Spinifex/ <i>Calystegia soldanella</i> grassland	Duneland
Terrestrial	Spinifex-pingao/ <i>Calystegia soldanella</i> grassland	Duneland
Terrestrial	Pohuehue- <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> vineland	Duneland
Terrestrial	<i>Carex testacea</i> -pohuehue- <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> sedgeland	Duneland
Terrestrial	<i>Ficinia nodosa</i> -pohuehue sedgeland	Duneland
Terrestrial	Spinifex sandfield	Duneland
Terrestrial	<i>Carex pumila</i> sandfield	Duneland
Terrestrial	Gorse-pohuehue scrub	Duneland
Terrestrial	Flatweeds herbfield	Duneland
Terrestrial	Mixed exotics herbfield	Duneland
Palustrine	Raupo reedland	Duneland
(Wildland Consultants 2005e, 2008a, Beadel 1994a)		

### Vegetation and Indigenous Flora

This site comprises a dynamic complex of large unstable foredunes and a highly erosional transgressive dunefield containing many blowouts, deflation basins, and other features of active dune systems. The juxtaposed matrix of a diverse array of vegetation types is linked to impacts on the vegetation, including grazing. As in other dune systems, spinifex and pingao (classed as At Risk-Relict in de Lange *et al.* 2009) dominate incipient foredunes and the stoss face of established dunes. Pohuehue and *Ficinia* occur inland from the lee face of the established foredune and dominate vegetation on stabilised transgressive dunes. In swales behind the established foredune *Carex testacea* dominates vegetation. Sandfields occur throughout the dune complex, those containing *Carex pumila*, and *Calystegia soldanella* are characteristic of deposition lobes and typically occur within the transgressive dunefield, those containing spinifex and *Lachnagrostis billiardieri* are characteristic of deflation basins in both established and transgressive dunes. Sand tussock (classed as At Risk-Declining in de Lange *et al.* 2009) was observed in large deflation basins and incipient foredunes at the eastern end of the site. An estimated hundred plants are currently present. Hinarepe has been recorded at this site in every survey since 1991 (Beadel 1992) and 2000, 2002, 2005 (Wildland Consultants 2005e). A 1993 census counted 424 plants in the Kaituna dunes (Tait 1993). It was then and, although no census was conducted during this study, is still the largest population within the Bay of Plenty. *Oxalis rubens* and *Zoysia pauciflora* (both regionally uncommon plant species, as per Beadel 2006b) are also present on dunes.

Small populations of *Cyclosorus interruptus*, *Thelypteris confluens*, and *Myriophyllum robustum* (all classed as At Risk-Declining in de Lange *et al.*

2009) occur in the wetlands, along with *Ranunculus macropus* (classified as Data Deficient in de Lange *et al.* 2009). *M. robustum* is currently not known to occur elsewhere in the Region. *Sparganium subglobosum* (regionally uncommon) is also present (P. Cashmore pers. comm.).

*Amphibromus fluitans* (classified as Threatened-Nationally Endangered in de Lange *et al.* 2009; NZFRI herbarium voucher specimen), only known from two other sites in the Region, may also occur in this wetland, although there is no fruiting material on the herbarium specimen and a subsequent visit to the wetland failed to locate any flowering material. (P. Cashmore pers. comm. 2008.)

## Fauna

The site provides a feeding and roosting area for a range of migrant bird species (OSNZ 2006). New Zealand dotterel and banded dotterel (both Threatened-Nationally Vulnerable in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) utilise the beach. White-fronted tern (Threatened-Nationally Vulnerable in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) are also present in large numbers. The Wairakei Stream and wetlands provide habitat for Australasian bittern (Threatened-Nationally Vulnerable) in Miskelly *et al.* 2008, black shag (At Risk-Naturally Uncommon), and a variety of other waterbirds (K. Owen, DOC, pers. comm.).

Two dabchick (Threatened-Nationally Vulnerable in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) and one black shag (At Risk-Naturally Uncommon in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) were observed at this site in August 2009.

Red-billed gull (Threatened-Nationally Vulnerable) are also present (K. Owen pers. comm.).

Katipo (*Latrodectus katipo*) (Chronically Threatened, Serious Decline) are present in good numbers (B. Christensen pers. comm.).

Shore skink have been observed within the site.

The fauna described for this site does not constitute an exhaustive account. A wide variety of indigenous invertebrates will be present in microsites with indigenous habitats, including, but not limited to, Crustaceans, Myriopods, Arachnids, and Hexapods including Diplurans, Proturans, Collembolids, and Insecta.

## Condition/Pressures

Weed species present include African boxthorn, blackberry, broom, climbing dock, *Gazania linearis*, gorse, kikuyu, lupin, rain daisy, pampas, South African ice plant, Japanese spindle tree, moth plant, and woolly nightshade,

This site is less weed-infested than the sand dunes to the west, and there was no detectable change in weed distribution or abundance within the site between 2000 and 2005. However, South African ice plant, gazania, and an unidentified succulent plant are present on the dunes near the houses (at the west end of the site), and there is potential that they will spread if left unchecked (Wildland Consultants 2005e).

Mature grey willow are present in the wetland.

The following activities had a negative impact on the site during the period of 2000-2005: Vegetation clearance has had a moderate negative impact and recreation (tracks) and dumping of inorganic waste has had a minor negative

impact on the site (Wildland Consultants 2005e). In 2008 vehicle tracks, particularly those generated by quad bikes, dumping of organic garden waste which includes living plants and plant fragments of succulent species, and trekking or grazing of horses and grazing of domestic stock on dunes all continue to have a negative impact on dunes.

Recent clearance of gorse from dunes and farmland adjacent dunes within the 8B1 block has had a positive impact. In addition, Ford Holdings are making efforts to reduce impact of the use of ATV's on dunes through fencing affected areas.

Sand tussock occurs in the same area impacted by quad biking. Between 1991 and 1993 the size of the sand tussock population was about 400 individuals (S.M. Beadel pers. obs.). By 2008 the population of sand tussock has decreased in size to c.150 individuals. This may in part be due to the impact of quad biking, which is a recent activity in this area.

The raupo wetland in the slack behind the dunes is a grazed paddock. It has been grazed and pugged in areas where willows are not dominant. This wetland is in relatively poor condition. (Wildland Consultants 2008a.)

**Tauranga City  
Council Category**

1

**Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)**

**Significance Assessment**

<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	H
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	H
	3.3	H
	3.4	H
	3.5	H
	3.6	H
	Diversity and Pattern	3.7
Naturalness	3.8	H
Ecological Context	3.9	M
	3.10	M
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	H
	3.12	M
	3.13	H

\* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.

\*\* H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.

**Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level**

National

**Significance Justification**

A good quality example of a nationally uncommon suite of habitats grading from back-dune wetland to an extensive highly erosional dune system that is under-represented nationally (i.e. coastal dunes). This site was identified as a site of national significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006). Much of this site was identified as a Category 1 natural heritage site in the Tauranga Ecological District (Beadel and Shaw 2000b). This is the only site on the mainland where back dune wetlands remain in direct contact with associated dunefield within the ecological district, though this wetland is now in relatively poor condition. Notable for the presence of good numbers of the black katipo (Chronically Threatened, Serious Decline) (B. Christensen pers. comm.).

Weed pressure is relatively low compared to other similar sites in the ecological district. One acutely threatened and six chronically threatened plant species are present.

Six Nationally Vulnerable, one At Risk, and a range of international migratory bird species currently use this site.

This site contains the best and largest population of sand tussock (an at risk species) in the Region.

It contains the only population of *Myriophyllum robustum* (a threatened species) in the ecological district. It also contains small populations of three other threatened wetland plants all of which are known from a handful of sites within the ecological district.

It also contains a good population of pingao (an “At Risk” species).

**Notes**

This site is ranked as a Category 1<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of regional significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

The wetland parts of this site are within the bed of the Wairakei Stream, and the banks are grazed pasture or pine plantation. Upstream of this site, Wairakei Stream flows through a TCC reserve adjacent to urban properties. Black shag (At Risk, Sparse) have occasionally been observed in the stream in the eastern parts of the reserve. The stream does not have an outlet - it drains into sand at the eastern end of this site.

A survey for native lizards and butterflies should be undertaken.

**References**

Beadel and Shaw 2000b; Wildland Consultants 2002b, 2005e, 2008a; OSNZ 2006.

---

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## MOTUOPAE ISLAND

**SES Number** 12  
**Grid Reference (NZMG)** E2788204 N6385905  
**Status** Unprotected (Urupa site)  
**Site Area** 2.2 ha  
**Altitudinal Range** 0 m asl  
**Bioclimatic Zone** Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Terrestrial	Manuka scrub.	Harbour island
Terrestrial	(Brush wattle)-mamaku/gorse-woolly nightshade-mahoe-hangehange scrub.	Harbour island
Estuarine	Sea rush-oioi tussockland. (Wildland Consultants 2003a and 2005e)	Intertidal flat

**Vegetation and Indigenous Flora** Motupae Island is located within Waikareao Estuary, in Tauranga Harbour. It includes manuka scrub, mamaku-dominated scrub, and sea rush-oioi tussockland. No rare or uncommon plant species have been recorded.

**Fauna** No specific fauna information.

**Condition/Pressures** Scattered pampas and gorse occur amongst the sea rush-oioi tussockland. Saltwater paspalum is present along the margins of this type. Dense pampas and scattered gorse are present on the terrestrial parts of the island. A restoration plan for the island was prepared for Huria Management Trust Lands in 2003 (Wildland Consultants 2003a).

**Tauranga City Council Category** 2

### Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)

#### Significance Assessment

Criterion*	RPS Number*	Ranking**
Representativeness	3.1	M
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	L
	3.3	L
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	H
Diversity and Pattern	3.7	L
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	H
	3.10	M
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	L
	3.12	M
	3.13	L

\* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out

page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.	
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.	
<b>Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level</b>	
Local	
<b>Significance Justification</b>	Motuopae is locally significant because, though small, it is an island comprising an example of indigenous vegetation and habitat which is characteristic of the indigenous biodiversity of Tauranga Ecological District.

**Notes** This site is ranked as a Category 3<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of local significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006). There is an Urupa on Motuopae, however the part of the island where the Urupa is located has been excluded from this site (the vegetation cover was mainly invasive weeds in 2003 (Wildland Consultants 2003a)).

**References** Wildland Consultants 2003a, 2005e, 2008a.

---

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## WAIKAREAO ESTUARY 2

<b>SES Number</b>	13
<b>Grid Reference (NZMG)</b>	E2788044 N6384820
<b>Status</b>	Protected (TCC reserve and DOC Wildlife Refuge) and unprotected parts
<b>Site Area</b>	16.1 ha
<b>Altitudinal Range</b>	<20 m asl
<b>Bioclimatic Zone</b>	Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Palustrine	Grey willow/raupo forest	Wetland
Estuarine	Mangrove scrub	Intertidal flat
Terrestrial	Whau-karamu-taupata-manuka-karo-harakeke shrubland	Hill
Estuarine	Mangrove shrubland	Intertidal flat
Terrestrial	Mamaku/kawakawa shrubland	Hill
Palustrine	<i>Olearia solandri</i> -harakeke-marsh ribbonwood-oioi-Baumea juncea-pampas-grey willow shrubland	Wetland
Estuarine	Searush-oioi tussockland	Intertidal flat
Palustrine	Grey willow/pampas-harakeke tussockland	Wetland
Estuarine	Oioi-marsh ribbonwood shrub-sedgeland	Wetland
Palustrine	Oioi-searush-(marsh ribbonwood) sedgeland	Wetland
Estuarine	Raupo-flax reedland	Intertidal flat
	Mangrove loamfield	
	(Wildland Consultants 2005e)	

### **Vegetation and Indigenous Flora**

Waikareao Estuary 2 is within Tauranga City and surrounded by urban development. To the north, it is adjacent to Waikareao Estuary 1. Waikareao Estuary 2 comprises saline wetlands and small freshwater wetlands on the southwestern side of Waikareao Estuary and in a gully that flows into the estuary. The saline wetlands include mangrove, marsh ribbonwood, oioi, and sea rush. The freshwater wetlands include grey willow, harakeke, raupo and pampas. No rare or uncommon plant species have been recorded at this site.

### **Fauna**

Banded rail (classed as At Risk-Naturally Uncommon in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) and North Island fernbird (classed as At Risk-Declining in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) were recorded in 1990 (Owen 1993). North Island fernbird was present in 2005.

### **Condition/Pressures**

Owen (1993) noted reclamation and drainage works; domestic rubbish dumping; grey willow, wattle and *Spartina* spp.

### **Tauranga City Council Category**

2

<b>Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)</b>		
<b>Significance Assessment</b>		
<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	M
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	M
	3.3	M
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	H
	3.7	H
Diversity and Pattern	3.7	H
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	H
	3.10	M
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	M
	3.12	M
	3.13	M
* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.		
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		
<b>Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level</b>		
Local		
<b>Significance Justification</b>	Waikareao Estuary 2 is locally significant because it includes, within a relatively small site, examples of indigenous vegetation which are typical of the indigenous biodiversity of Tauranga Harbour. Two At Risk bird species has been recorded here in the past.	

#### Notes

This site is ranked as a Category 3<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of local significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

#### References

Owen 1993; Wildland Consultants 2005e, 2008a.

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## KOPURERERUA STREAM WETLAND

<b>SES Number</b>	14
<b>Grid Reference (NZMG)</b>	E2786157 N6382724
<b>Status</b>	Part protected (unnamed recreation reserve), part unprotected.
<b>Site Area</b>	62.1 ha
<b>Altitudinal Range</b>	0-40 m asl
<b>Bioclimatic Zone</b>	Coastal and semi-coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Palustrine	Grey willow forest	Wetland
Palustrine	(Wattle)/mamaku-Japanese honeysuckle-gorse scrub (Wildland Consultants 2008a)	Wetland

### Vegetation and Indigenous Flora

This site comprises a large grey willow wetland, several smaller wetlands of varying composition, and a nearby hillslope of secondary indigenous scrub and shrubland. Additional indigenous species noted at this site include kohuhu, *Cyperus ustulatus*, *Calystegia sepium*, raupo, and *Baumea* sp. Plantings of indigenous species are common along the edges of these wetlands, and also along the Kopurererua Stream canal which flows alongside the site. Species which have been planted include akeake, karamu, ngaio, harakeke, kohuhu, manuka, ti kouka, and tarata. It appears that grey willow has been removed from some parts of the site, such as Unit 5, which now comprises treeland. No threatened species have been recorded at this site.

### Fauna

Pukeko are common at this site, and little shag (classed as At Risk-Naturally Uncommon in Miskelly *et al.* 2008), spur-winger plover, grey-mallard hybrid and skylark were also observed at this site during the current study. Long-finned eel (Chronically Threatened, Gradual Decline), yelloweye mullet, and short-finned eel have been recorded in Kopurererua Stream, which flows down a canal alongside the site (NIWA 2008).

### Condition/Pressures

This site is dissected by the Takitimu Drive toll road, which is bordered by wide grassy verges and plantings of native species. Native plantings are generally in long, narrow strips adjacent to either the road or the wetland vegetation that comprises this site. Native plantings have also been established at the north-eastern end of the site, near to a pedestrian boardwalk. The largest wetland at the site is dominated by grey willow, which is an invasive species. Other pest plants which are present at this site include brush wattle, gorse, woolly nightshade, Japanese honeysuckle, and blackberry.

### Tauranga City Council Category

2

<b>Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)</b>		
<b>Significance Assessment</b>		
<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	H
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	L
	3.3	M
	3.4	L
	3.5	M
	3.6	M
	3.7	L
Diversity and Pattern	3.7	L
Naturalness	3.8	L
Ecological Context	3.9	M
	3.10	L
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	M
	3.12	M
	3.13	M
* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.		
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		
<b>Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level</b>		
Local		
<b>Significance Justification</b>	This site is of local ecological significance because, although highly modified, it is, for Tauranga ED, a relatively large freshwater wetland. Freshwater wetlands have been greatly reduced in extent in New Zealand. One At Risk bird species has been recorded at this site.	

#### Notes

This site is ranked as a Category 4<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of local significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

The site is also part of the 'Hidden Gorge' corridor (Environment Bay of Plenty 2006).

#### References

Wildland Consultants 2005e, 2008a; NIWA 2008.

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## WAIMAPU ESTUARY WALKWAY

<b>SES Number</b>	15
<b>Grid Reference (NZMG)</b>	E2788283 N6382626
<b>Status</b>	Protected (TCC reserve) and unprotected parts
<b>Site Area</b>	6.6 ha
<b>Altitudinal Range</b>	<20 m asl
<b>Bioclimatic Zone</b>	Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Palustrine	Grey willow-manuka forest.	Wetland
Palustrine	Raupo-pampas-harakeke- <i>Baumea articulata</i> /oioi-mangrove-sea rush sedge-tussockland.	Wetland
Estuarine	<i>Schoenoplectus pungens</i> sedgeland.	Intertidal flat
Palustrine	<i>Baumea articulata</i> -harakeke-raupo reedland.	Wetland
Estuarine	Mangrove shrubland and loamfield.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Oioi-mangrove-sea rush-raupo shrub rushland.	Intertidal flat
Terrestrial	Akeake-manuka-tarata-kohuhu-ti kouka-ngaio-koromiko-harakeke scrub.	Hillslope
Palustrine	Grey willow forest.	Wetland
Estuarine	Oioi-marsh ribbonwood shrub-rushland.	Intertidal flat
Terrestrial	Mamaku-tree privet treeland (Beadel 1994d, Wildland Consultants 2005e)	Hillslope

**Vegetation and Indigenous Flora**

Waimapu Estuary Walkway is located on the northwestern margin of Waimapu Estuary, and is adjacent to urban areas and parkland. The site includes mangrove scrub and shrubland, saline wetlands of species such as oioi and sea rush, and grey willow-dominated wetlands. *Tetraria capillaris*, a regionally uncommon species, is present (Beadel 1994d).

**Fauna**

Nearby residents recorded the presence of North Island fernbird (classed as At Risk-Declining in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) in 1990 (Owen 1993).

**Condition/Pressures**

No information.

**Tauranga City Council Category**

2

**Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)**

**Significance Assessment**

<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	M
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	L
	3.3	L
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	M
	Diversity and Pattern	3.7
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	H
	3.10	M
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	L
	3.12	M
	3.13	L

\* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.

\*\* H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.

**Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level**

**Local**

<b>Significance Justification</b>	The site is locally significant because, though small, it is a typical example of indigenous vegetation and habitat types which are relatively common in the Tauranga Ecological District. A range of pressures, including weed species, reflects its urban setting. There is an unconfirmed report of one At Risk bird species.
-----------------------------------	--

**Notes**

This site is ranked as a Category 4<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of local significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

**References**

Owen 1993; Beadel 1994d; Wildland Consultants 2005e, 2008a.

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## WAIMAPU STREAM WETLAND

**Site Number** 17  
**Grid Reference (NZMG)** E2787609 N6380401  
**Status** No known  
**Site Area** 0.2 ha  
**Altitudinal Range** m asl  
**Bioclimatic Zone** Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Palustrine	<i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> shrubland (Wildland Consultants 2005e)	Wetland

**Vegetation and Indigenous Flora** A small area of indigenous wetland vegetation within the Waimapu Valley dominated by *Coprosma propinqua* subsp. *Propinqua*.

**Fauna** No information.

**Condition/Pressures** Exotic wetland weeds, including grey and crack willow threaten this site.

**Tauranga City Council Category** 2

## HAIRINI

**SES Number** 18  
**Grid Reference (NZMG)** E2789135 N6381772  
**Status** Unprotected  
**Site Area** 2.1 ha  
**Altitudinal Range** <20 m asl  
**Bioclimatic Zone** Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Palustrine	Grey willow forest.	Wetland
Estuarine	Marsh ribbonwood shrubland.	Intertidal flat
Palustrine	Grey willow/gorse- <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> -manuka-harakeke shrubland.	Wetland
Estuarine	Mangrove/ <i>Schoenoplectus pungens</i> sedgeland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Oioi rushland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Oioi- <i>Baumea articulata</i> rushland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	<i>Schoenoplectus pungens</i> sedgeland.	Intertidal flat
Palustrine	<i>Baumea articulata</i> reedland. (Wildland Consultants 2005e)	Wetland

**Vegetation and Indigenous Flora**

This is a small site on the margin of Tauranga Harbour, within Tauranga City. The site is dissected by a four-lane causeway. The most abundant vegetation type is grey willow/gorse-*Coprosma propinqua* subsp. *propinqua*-manuka-harakeke shrubland, and there are small areas of grey willow forest, and saline wetlands. No rare or uncommon plant species have been recorded.

**Fauna**

Hairini shoreline is a neap high tide roost for some wader species, for example pied stilt (Owen *et al.* 2006) such as pied stilts (classed as At Risk-Declining in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) and variable oystercatchers (classed as At Risk-Recovering in Miskelly *et al.* 2008).

**Condition/Pressures**

Unknown.

**Tauranga City Council Category**

2

**Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)**

**Significance Assessment**

<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	M
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	L
	3.3	L
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	H
	Diversity and Pattern	3.7
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	H
	3.10	L
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	L
	3.12	M
	3.13	L

\* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.

\*\* H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.

**Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level**

Local

**Significance Justification** The site is locally significant because, though small, it contains indigenous vegetation and habitat types which are typical of the indigenous biodiversity of Tauranga Ecological District (ED). It includes small examples of freshwater wetland, a habitat that has been greatly reduced in extent in the ED. Habitat for two At Risk bird species.

**Notes** This site is ranked as a Category 4<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of local significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

**References** Wildland Consultants 2005e, 2008a; Owen *et al.* 2006.

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## KAITEMAKO STREAM MOUTH

<b>SES Number</b>	19
<b>Grid Reference (NZMG)</b>	E2790350 N6381552
<b>Status</b>	Protected (TCC reserve) and unprotected parts
<b>Site Area</b>	16.6 ha
<b>Altitudinal Range</b>	<20 m asl
<b>Bioclimatic Zone</b>	Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Palustrine	Grey willow/manuka treeland	Wetland
Estuarine	Mangrove scrub	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Mangrove shrubland	Intertidal flat
Palustrine	Manuka shrubland	Wetland
Palustrine	Grey willow/manuka-raupo shrubland	Wetland
Palustrine	Manuka-harakeke-ti kouka-(raupo)-(oioi) shrubland	Wetland
Estuarine	Oioi sedgeland	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Oioi-marsh ribbonwood shrub-sedgeland	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Oioi-searush sedgeland	Intertidal flat
Palustrine	Oioi-searush sedgeland	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Oioi-marsh ribbonwood sedgeland	Intertidal flat
Palustrine	Bolboschoenus fluviatilis reedland	Wetland
Estuarine	Mangrove loamfield	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Open water	Estuarine River

(Wildland Consultants 2005e)

### Vegetation and Indigenous Flora

Kaitemako Stream Mouth is located within Welcome Bay, Tauranga City. The most widespread species within this site is mangrove. There are also areas of saltmarsh which include oioi, sea rush, and marsh ribbonwood. On the northern margins of the site there are variable mixtures of grey willow and manuka, with other species such as raupo and harakeke. No rare or uncommon plant species have been recorded at this site.

### Fauna

North Island fernbird (classified as At Risk-Declining in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) was present in 2007 (P. Cashmore pers. comm.) and banded rail (classified as At Risk-Naturally Uncommon in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) were recorded in 1990 (Owen 1993).

### Condition/Pressures

Owen (1993) recorded weeds (for example wattle, willow, gorse), drainage works, stormwater discharge, and mangrove removal for boat access.

### Tauranga City Council Category

2

## Significance Assessment

Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)		
Significance Assessment		
Criterion*	RPS Number*	Ranking**
Representativeness	3.1	M
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	M
	3.3	M
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	M
Diversity and Pattern	3.7	H
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	H
	3.10	M
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	M
	3.12	M
	3.13	M
* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.		
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		
Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level		
Local		
<b>Significance Justification</b>	Kaitemako Stream Mouth is locally significant because it includes examples of indigenous vegetation (estuarine wetlands) which are relatively common in Tauranga Harbour. Although the site is relatively large, it is highly fragmented and there are a wide range of pressures operating typical of urban estuaries. One At Risk bird species is present and another At Risk bird species has been recorded in the past and is likely to still be present, but in low numbers (K. Owen pers. comm.).	

### Notes

This site is ranked as a Category 3<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of local significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

### References

Owen 1993; Wildland Consultants 2005e, 2008a.

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## WELCOME BAY

**SES Number** 20  
**Grid Reference (NZMG)** E2790462 N6380351  
**Status** Protected (TCC reserve) and unprotected parts  
**Site Area** 25.4 ha  
**Altitudinal Range** <20 m asl  
**Bioclimatic Zone** Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Palustrine	Grey willow/raupo-harakeke-purei treeland	Alluvial flat
Estuarine	Mangrove scrub	
Terrestrial	Akeake-manuka-tarata-kohuhu-ti kouka-ngaio-koromiko-harakeke scrub	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Mangrove shrubland	Intertidal flat
Terrestrial	Whau-karamu-ngaio-(tarata)-(manuka)-(pohutukawa)-(taupata)/kikuyu grass-cocksfoot shrubland	Intertidal flat
Estuarine		Alluvial flat
Riverine	Searush tussockland	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Oioi sedgeland	Alluvial flat
Riverine	Raupo reedland	Intertidal flat
	(Wildland Consultants 2005e)	Alluvial flat

### Vegetation and Indigenous Flora

This site is located on the southern margin of Welcome Bay and in an adjacent valley. It includes estuarine wetlands of mangrove, searush, and oioi, and freshwater wetlands of grey willow, harakeke, and raupo. In the valley, there are planted areas of indigenous shrubland and scrub which include whau, karamu, akeake, manuka, and ti kouka. No rare or uncommon plant species have been recorded at this site.

### Fauna

No marsh birds were recorded here in 1990 (Owen 1993).

### Condition/Pressures

1990 Owen (1993) recorded drainage works, organic rubbish dumping; and weeds (for example taro, *Tradescantia*, wild ginger, banana passionfruit, woolly nightshade).

### Tauranga City Council Category

2

<b>Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)</b>		
<b>Significance Assessment</b>		
<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	M
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	L
	3.3	M
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	H
	Diversity and Pattern	3.7
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	H
	3.10	M
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	M
	3.12	M
	3.13	M
* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.		
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		
<b>Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level</b>		
Local		
<b>Significance Justification</b>	The Welcome Bay site is locally significant because it comprises indigenous vegetation and habitat types which are typical of the indigenous biodiversity of the Tauranga Ecological District. This site is moderate in size, long and narrow in shape, and impacted by a range of weeds and urban pressures.	

**Notes** The part of the site which is within the valley is subject to a community-led project to control weeds and replant with indigenous species. This site is ranked as a Category 3<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of local significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

**References** Owen 1993; Wildland Consultants 2005e, 2008a.

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## TYE PARK INLET

**SES Number** 21  
**Grid Reference (NZMG)** E2792190 N6381657  
**Status** Unprotected  
**Site Area** 2.4 ha  
**Altitudinal Range** <20 m asl  
**Bioclimatic Zone** Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Estuarine	Sandfield.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Oioi rushland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Mangrove scrub.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Mangrove-oioi-sea rush scrub.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Open water	Intertidal flat

(Wildland Consultants 2005e)

**Vegetation and Indigenous Flora** Tye Park Inlet is a small site in Welcome Bay. It comprises estuarine wetlands of mangrove, oioi, and searush. No rare or uncommon plant species have been recorded at this site.

**Fauna** Banded rail (classed as At Risk-Naturally Uncommon) were recorded in 1990 (Owen 1993).

**Condition/Pressures** Pampas is present on the margins of the site. The site is surrounded by exotic vegetation (for example brush wattle-woolly nightshade scrub to the east and mown grass to the west) and residential development. Some unauthorised mangrove clearance has occurred in past years (P. Cashmore pers. comm.).

**Tauranga City Council Category** 2

<b>Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)</b>		
<b>Significance Assessment</b>		
<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	M
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	M
	3.3	L
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	N/A
	Diversity and Pattern	3.7
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	H
	3.10	M
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	L
	3.12	M
	3.13	L
* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.		
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		
<b>Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level</b>		
Local		
<b>Significance Justification</b>	Tye Park Inlet is locally significant because it contains small examples of indigenous mangrove scrub and estuarine wetlands, which occur widely in Tauranga Harbour. There is one record of an At Risk bird species.	

**Notes** This site is ranked as a Category 4<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of local significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

**References** Owen 1993; Wildland Consultants 2005e, 2008a.

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## RANGINUI ROAD

**Site Number** 22  
**Grid Reference (NZMG)** E2792497 N6382221  
**Status** Not known  
**Site Area** 1.9 ha  
**Altitudinal Range** m asl  
**Bioclimatic Zone** Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Palustrine	Grey willow/raupo treeland	Wetland
Estuarine	Mangrove shrubland	Intertidal flats
Estuarine	Searush-(pasture) tussockland	Intertidal flats
Estuarine	Sandfield	Intertidal flats
(Wildland Consultants 2005e)		

**Vegetation and Indigenous Flora** Small area of mangrove shrubland sheltered by a small sandbank, backed by a small area of freshwater wetland now dominated by grey willow.

**Fauna** No information

**Condition/Pressures** The freshwater wetland is dominated by grey willow. Sedimentation exerts significant pressure on estuarine systems throughout Tauranga Harbour.

**Tauranga City Council Category** 2

## NGAPEKE ROAD WETLANDS

<b>SES Number</b>	23
<b>Grid Reference (NZMG)</b>	E2793525 N6382588
<b>Status</b>	Protected (TCC reserve) and unprotected parts
<b>Site Area</b>	20.7 ha
<b>Altitudinal Range</b>	<20 m asl
<b>Bioclimatic Zone</b>	Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Palustrine	Grey willow forest	Wetland
Estuarine	Mangrove scrub	Intertidal flat
Palustrine	Grey willow/manuka-raupo scrub	Wetland
Palustrine	Manuka-grey willow/harakeke- <i>Baumea juncea</i> -marsh ribbonwood shrubland	Wetland
Estuarine	Mangrove shrubland	Intertidal flat
Palustrine	Manuka-(raupo) shrubland	Wetland
Palustrine	Harakeke-pampas-manuka-marsh ribbonwood/searush-oioi tussockland	Wetland
Estuarine	Searush-oioi tussockland	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Searush-oioi-mangrove tussockland	Intertidal flat
Palustrine	Raupo reedland	Wetland
Estuarine	Sandfield	Flats
Estuarine	Mangrove loamfield	Intertidal flat

(Wildland Consultants 2005e)

**Vegetation and Indigenous Flora**

Ngapeke Road Wetland is on the southern side of the Rangataua Estuary. It includes saline wetlands on the estuary margin and freshwater wetlands in an adjacent gully. The saline wetlands are dominated by mangrove, sea rush, and oioi. The freshwater wetland in the valley is dominated by grey willow. No rare or uncommon plant species have been recorded at this site.

**Fauna**

Banded rail (classed as At Risk-Naturally Uncommon in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) sign and North Island fernbird (classed as At Risk-Declining in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) were recorded in 1990 (Owen 1993).

**Condition/Pressures**

Gorse, grey willow, blackberry, pampas, and she-oak (Owen 1993, Wildland Consultants 2005e).

**Tauranga City Council Category**

2

**Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)**

**Significance Assessment**

<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	M
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	M
	3.3	M
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	M
	Diversity and Pattern	3.7
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	H
	3.10	M
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	M
	3.12	M
	3.13	M

\* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.

\*\* H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.

**Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level**

Local

<b>Significance Justification</b>	Ngapeke Road Wetland is locally significant because it includes examples of indigenous vegetation types which occur widely in Tauranga Harbour. The site is narrow and convoluted, which decreases its resilience to the range of pressures operating on it. Two At Risk bird species were recorded here in 1990.
-----------------------------------	---

**Notes** This site is ranked as a Category 2<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of local significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

**References** Owen 1993; Wildland Consultants 2005e, 2008a.

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## MANGATAWA

**SES Number** 24  
**Grid Reference (NZMG)** E2795507 N6384567  
**Status** Unprotected  
**Site Area** 8.3 ha  
**Altitudinal Range** <20 m asl  
**Bioclimatic Zone** Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Estuarine	Sea rush-oioi tussockland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Sea rush tussockland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Mangrove scrub, shrubland and loamfield	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Oioi- <i>Bolboschoenus fluviatilis</i> rushland. (Wildland Consultants 2005e)	Intertidal flat

**Vegetation and Indigenous Flora** Mangatawa is a small site on the northern side of Rangataua Estuary below Mangatawa Marae. It comprises estuarine wetlands of mangrove, searush, oioi, and *Bolboschoenus fluviatilis*. The site is adjacent to created wetlands within the sewage treatment works. No rare or uncommon plant species have been recorded at this site.

**Fauna** Banded rail (classed as At Risk-Naturally Uncommon in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) were present in 1990 (Owen 1993). North Island fernbird (classed as At Risk-Declining in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) was present in 2007 (K. Owens pers. obs.).

**Condition/Pressures** Owen (1993) noted stock access, gorse, pampas, drainage and reclamation works, and stormwater discharge.

**Tauranga City Council Category** 2

<b>Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)</b>		
<b>Significance Assessment</b>		
<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	M
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	M
	3.3	M
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	M
	Diversity and Pattern	3.7
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	M
	3.10	L
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	L
	3.12	M
	3.13	L
* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.		
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		
<b>Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level</b>		
Local		
<b>Significance Justification</b>	Mangatawa is locally significant because it comprises estuarine vegetation typical of the vegetation of Tauranga Harbour. There are records of two At Risk bird species.	

**Notes**

This site is ranked as a Category 3<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of local significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

**References**

Owen 1993; Wildland Consultants 2005e, 2008a.

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## RANGATAUA BAY

<b>SES Number</b>	25
<b>Grid Reference (NZMG)</b>	E2793606 N6385182
<b>Status</b>	Unprotected
<b>Site Area</b>	67.4 ha
<b>Altitudinal Range</b>	<20 m asl
<b>Bioclimatic Zone</b>	Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Palustrine	Ti kouka/grey willow-manuka forest	Wetland
Palustrine	Grey willow forest	Wetland
Estuarine	Mangrove scrub	Intertidal flat
Palustrine	Manuka scrub	Wetland
Estuarine	Mangrove shrubland	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Searush tussockland	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Searush-oioi tussockland	Intertidal flat
Palustrine	Pampas tussockland	Wetland
Palustrine	Ti kouka/pampas tussockland	Wetland
Estuarine	Marsh ribbonwood/searush- <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> / <i>Samolus repens</i> - <i>Sarcocornia quinqueflora</i> tussockland	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Marsh ribbonwood/searush- <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> tussockland	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	<i>Ficinia nodosa</i> -searush/ <i>Samolus repens</i> - <i>Sarcocornia quinqueflora</i> tussockland	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Marsh ribbonwood/oioi-searush sedgeland	Intertidal flat
Palustrine	Manuka/oioi-searush-marsh ribbonwood	Wetland
Estuarine	sedgeland	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Sandfield	Intertidal flat
	Mangrove loamfield	

(Wildland Consultants 2005e)

### Vegetation and Indigenous Flora

Rangataua Bay includes saline wetlands dominated by mangrove, oioi, and searush. On the western side of the site there are small examples of willow-dominated freshwater wetlands. At the northeastern end of the site there is a small area of manuka scrub and an area of ti kouka/pampas tussockland. No rare or uncommon plant species have been recorded at this site.

### Fauna

Banded rail (classed as At Risk-Naturally Uncommon in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) and North Island fernbird (classed as At Risk-Declining) were recorded in 1990 (Owen 1993).

### Condition/Pressures

Owen (1993) recorded stock access, *Spartina* sp., grey willow, pampas, drainage and reclamation works, and stormwater discharge from the highway. Pampas continues to be a problem within this site.

### Tauranga City Council Category

2

<b>Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)</b>		
<b>Significance Assessment</b>		
<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	M
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	M
	3.3	M
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	M
	Diversity and Pattern	3.7
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	M
	3.10	L
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	M
	3.12	M
	3.13	M
* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.		
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		
<b>Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level</b>		
Local		
<b>Significance Justification</b>	Rangataua Bay is locally significant because it includes estuarine wetland vegetation typical of the vegetation of Tauranga Harbour. It provides a protective buffer to Te Maunga oxidation pond embankments wader roost. Two At Risk bird species have been recorded at this site.	

**Notes** This site is ranked as a Category 3<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of local significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

**References** Owen 1993; Wildland Consultants 2005e, 2008a.

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## ORUAMATUA

**Site Number** 26  
**Grid Reference (NZMG)** E2792441 N6383987.  
**Status** Not known  
**Site Area** 5.4 ha  
**Altitudinal Range** <20 m asl  
**Bioclimatic Zone** Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Terrestrial	Brush wattle-mamaku-(mahoe) treeland (Wildland Consultants 2005e)	Scarp

**Vegetation and Indigenous Flora** Oruamatua comprises a long thin strip of disturbed, degraded and weed invaded coastal treeland on coastal cliffs and toeslopes. The vegetation is dominated by exotic broadleaf species and mamaku.

**Fauna**

**Condition/Pressures** Narrow strip of vegetation which is vulnerable to weed invasion.

**Tauranga City Council Category** 2

## WAIPU BAY MARGINS

<b>SES Number</b>	27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 41, 42
<b>Grid Reference (NZMG)</b>	E2791579 N6385376
<b>Status</b>	Unprotected
<b>Site Area</b>	19.9, 2.0, 1.6, 4.4, 14.7, 1.1, and 1.6 ha, for a total of 45.3 ha.
<b>Altitudinal Range</b>	<20 m asl
<b>Bioclimatic Zone</b>	Coastal

The description presented below is for an area mapped, described, and assessed under the site name “Waipu Bay Margins” in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report (Wildland Consultants 2008a). The SES sites listed above are nested within the Waipu Bay Margins site, and together their boundaries are largely equivalent to those identified in the Waipu Bay Margin site in the Tauranga Natural Area study.

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Palustrine	Grey willow forest.	Wetland
Palustrine	Grey willow-manuka forest.	Wetland
Palustrine	Grey willow/manuka treeland.	Wetland
Estuarine	Mangrove scrub, shrubland, and loamfield.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	<i>Ficinia nodosa</i> -sea rush tussockland.	Intertidal flat
Palustrine	Raupo reedland.	Wetland
Estuarine	Sea rush tussockland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Sea rush-oioi sedgeland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Sea rush-(pasture) tussockland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Brush wattle-grey willow/harakeke-pampas tussockland	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Marsh ribbonwood/oioi-sea rush sedgeland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	<i>Baumea juncea</i> -harakeke-oioi sedgeland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Mangrove/ <i>Schoenoplectus pungens</i> sedgeland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Manuka/oioi-sea rush-marsh ribbonwood sedgeland.	Intertidal flat
Palustrine	<i>Schoenoplectus pungens</i> sedgeland.	Wetland
Palustrine	<i>Baumea articulata</i> -pohuehue reedland.	Wetland
Terrestrial	Grey willow/raupo-harakeke-pampas reedland.	Alluvial flats
Palustrine	Manuka-gorse scrub.	Wetland
Estuarine	Manuka scrub.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Sea rush- <i>Samolus repens</i> -marsh ribbonwood- <i>Baumea juncea</i> -oioi tussockland.	Intertidal flat
Estuarine	Glasswort sandfield.	Estuarine River
	Open water	

(Wildland Consultants 2005e)

### Vegetation and Indigenous Flora

This site includes multiple examples of estuarine wetlands on the margins of Waipu Bay, between the Matapihi Peninsula and Tauranga Airport. The saline wetlands are dominated by mixtures of mangrove, searush, oioi, and marsh ribbonwood. Non-tidal parts of the site include freshwater wetlands of grey willow, raupo, and harakeke, and manuka scrub. No rare or uncommon plant species have been recorded at this site.

### Fauna

Banded rail (classed as At Risk-Naturally Uncommon) and North Island fernbird (classes as At Risk-Declining) were recorded here in 1990 (Owen

1993).

**Condition/Pressures** Owen (1993) recorded extensive reclamation and drainage works, stock access, pampas, wattle, radiata pine; industrial and domestic rubbish dumping; and recreational horse-riding.

**Tauranga City Council Category** 2

<b>Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)</b>		
<b>Significance Assessment</b>		
<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	M
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	M
	3.3	M
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	M
	Diversity and Pattern	3.7
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	H
	3.10	M
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	M
	3.12	M
	3.13	M
* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.		
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		
<b>Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level</b>		
Local		
<b>Significance Justification</b>	This site acts as a protective buffer to a nationally significant wader feeding area at Waipu Bay Intertidal Flats. It contains a diverse range of vegetation types. Pest plants are locally present. Two At Risk bird species have previously been recorded at this site.	

**Notes** This site includes five sites (Waipu Bay 1 to 5) which are all ranked as Category 2-4<sup>1</sup> sites in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of local to regional significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006). This site is part of the Waipu Bay Key Ecological Zone (Wildlands 2006g).

**References** Owen 1993; Wildland Consultants 2005e, 2008a.

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## MAUAO 2

<b>Site Number</b>	32
<b>Grid Reference (NZMG)</b>	E2790379 N6391708
<b>Status</b>	Protected (TCC reserves - Mauao, Mauao Recreation Reserve) and unprotected parts
<b>Site Area</b>	4.6 ha
<b>Altitudinal Range</b>	0-60 m asl
<b>Bioclimatic Zone</b>	Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Terrestrial	Macrocarpa/karaka-pohutukawa treeland	Hillslope
Terrestrial	Pohutukawa treeland	Hillslope
Terrestrial	Radiata pine-eucalyptus-(sycamore)/pohutukawa-poplar treeland	Hillslope
Terrestrial	Sycamore-karaka-radiata pine treeland	Hillslope
Terrestrial	Kawakawa-whau-mamaku scrub	Hillslope
Terrestrial	Ngaio scrub	Hillslope
Terrestrial	Akeake-manuka-tarata-kohuhu-ti kouka-ngaio-koromiko-harakeke scrub	Hillslope
Terrestrial	Kawakawa-pohuehue/pohuehue-blackberry shrubland	Hillslope
Terrestrial	Pohutukawa-taupata/ <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> tree-tussockland	Hillslope
Terrestrial	Spinifex-pingao/ <i>Calystegia soldanella</i> grassland (Wildland Consultants 2005e)	Incipient foredune

### Vegetation and Indigenous Flora

Mauao 2 encompasses predominately indigenous vegetation on the eastern-facing, lower slopes of Mauao. It includes pohutukawa treeland and coastal scrub, some of which has been planted as part of a Council-managed restoration project. No uncommon plant species have been recorded. *Zoysia pauciflora* and *Oxalis rubens* are present (both are regionally uncommon species).

### Fauna

Northern blue penguins (At Risk-Declining in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) breed on the Mauao coast in good numbers (OSNZ 2006). Shore skinks are present but at low abundance (John Heaphy pers. comm. 2006). The land snail *Succinea archeyi* (Chornically Threatened, Serious Decline) is a rare inhabitant of the foreshore dunes (Powell 1933).

### Condition/Pressures

Fire, erosion, and invasive weeds such as sycamore, pampas and other exotic grasses, for example kikuyu, cocksfoot, and ratstail (Wildland Consultants 2004a). This site includes revegetated areas (Wildland Consultants 2005e).

### Tauranga City Council Category

2

<b>Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)</b>		
<b>Significance Assessment</b>		
<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	M
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	M
	3.3	M
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	H
	3.7	M
Diversity and Pattern	3.8	L
Naturalness	3.9	M
Ecological Context	3.10	M
	3.11	L
Viability and Sustainability	3.12	M
	3.13	L
* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.		
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		
<b>Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level</b>		
Regional		
<b>Significance Justification</b>	This site is a mix of extensively modified indigenous and adventive vegetation, and includes revegetated areas. However, it provides a partial protective buffer to the nationally ranked 'Mauao 1' site, is a breeding area for an At Risk bird species, and forms part of a nationally significant geological feature.	

#### Notes

This site is ranked as a Category 2<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of regional significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006). Surveys for rare land snails are recommended.

Mauao has high historic, archaeological, and heritage values.

The site forms part of the Smartgrowth 'Coastal strip' corridor, ranked as being highest priority (Wildland Consultants 2007c and 2007d).

#### References

Kenny and Hayward 1996; Wildland Consultants 2004a; Wildland Consultants 2005e; OSNZ 2006.

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## MOTURIKI ISLAND

**SES Number** 33  
**Grid Reference (NZMG)** E2791310 N6391803  
**Status** Protected (TCC reserve - Moturiki)  
**Site Area** 2.8 ha  
**Altitudinal Range** <20 m asl  
**Bioclimatic Zone** Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Terrestrial	Pohutukawa-karo-taupata-coastal mahoe-ngaio scrub.	Marine island
Terrestrial	(Ngaio)-(harakeke)-(pohutukawa)/South African ice plant-Indian doab-kikuyu grassland.	Marine island
Terrestrial	<i>Ficinia nodosa</i> -pohuehue/ratstail-cocksfoot-annual poa grassland.	Marine island
Terrestrial	(Taupata)-(pohutukawa)/(oioi)/(glasswort)-( <i>Senecio lautus</i> ) rockland. (Wildland Consultants 2005e)	Marine island

### Vegetation and Indigenous Flora

Moturiki is a small island which is connected to Mount Maunganui Beach by a rock causeway. The vegetation is dominated by pohutukawa, karo, ngaio, tuapata and coastal mahoe. Coastal mahoe occurs predominantly on islands in the Bay of Plenty (for example Matakana, Rurima). This population of coastal mahoe may have originated from plantings on Moturiki during 1972-75 (Beadel 1995e).

### Fauna

Moturiki is a nesting site for good numbers of breeding northern blue penguin (At Risk-Declining in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) (John Heaphy pers. comm. 2006).

### Condition/Pressures

Moturiki was quarried in the past and was then used as a marine theme park. Recreational pressures are still present and there are invasive weeds such as South African ice plant, Norfolk Island hibiscus (*Lagunaria pattersonii*), dimorphotheca, evergreen buckthorn, boxthorn, and pampas (Wildland Consultants 2006g). Australian ngaio (*Myoporum insulare*) has been planted on the island (Beadel 1995e).

### Tauranga City Council Category

2

## Significance Assessment

Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)		
Significance Assessment		
Criterion*	RPS Number*	Ranking**
Representativeness	3.1	M
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	M
	3.3	M
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	H
Diversity and Pattern	3.7	M
Naturalness	3.8	L
Ecological Context	3.9	L
	3.10	M
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	L
	3.12	M
	3.13	L
* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.		
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		
Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level		
Local		
<b>Significance Justification</b>	Moturiki includes small remnants of coastal forest which were once more widespread throughout the ED. However, they have been heavily modified by disturbance and ongoing weed infestations. It provides breeding habitat for an At Risk bird species (northern blue penguin).	

### Notes

This site is ranked as a Category 3<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of local significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

The site forms part of the Smartgrowth 'Coastal strip' corridor, ranked as being highest priority (Wildland Consultants 2007c and 2007d).

### References

Beadel 1995e; Wildland Consultants 2005e, 2008a; rapid field assessment (2005).

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## HOPUKIORE

**SES Number** 34  
**Grid Reference (NZMG)** E2791110 N6391370  
**Status** Protected (TCC reserve - Hopukiore Reserve) and unprotected parts  
**Site Area** 2.1 ha  
**Altitudinal Range** <20 m asl  
**Bioclimatic Zone** Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Terrestrial	Pohutukawa treeland (Wildland Consultants 2005e)	Hills

**Vegetation and Indigenous Flora** Hopukiore (otherwise known as Mount Drury) comprises modified pohutukawa forest and scrub within a public reserve. Photographs from the early 1900s show that indigenous vegetation had been virtually removed from the site. The current vegetation is derived mainly from plantings and natural regeneration (Beadel 1995e). No rare or uncommon plant species have been recorded here.

**Fauna** No notable species have been recorded.

**Condition/Pressures** Hopukiore is subject to pressures arising from recreational impacts (for example pedestrian tracks) and invasive weeds such as tradescantia, arum lily, climbing asparagus, phoenix palm, cotoneaster, agapanthus, and Japanese honeysuckle (Wildland Consultants 2006g).

**Tauranga City Council Category** 2

<b>Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)</b>		
<b>Significance Assessment</b>		
<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	M
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	L
	3.3	L
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	M
	Diversity and Pattern	3.7
Naturalness	3.8	L
Ecological Context	3.9	L
	3.10	L
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	L
	3.12	M
	3.13	L
* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.		
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		
<b>Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level</b>		
Local		
<b>Significance Justification</b>	Hopukiore is locally significant because it includes a small example of pohutukawa forest - a vegetation type which has been greatly reduced in extent in the Tauranga Ecological District. The vegetation present reflects a high degree of modification and weed invasion typical in urban areas.	

**Notes** This site is ranked as a Category 4<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of local significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

Hopukiore has historic and archaeological values.

**References** Beadel 1995e; Wildland Consultants 2005e, 2008a; rapid field assessment (2005).

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## SHARK ALLEY TO KAITUNA SPIT SAND DUNES

**SES Number** 35  
**Grid Reference (NZMG)** E2793415, N6389138  
**Status** Protected (TCC reserve) and unprotected parts  
**Site Area** 62.3 ha  
**Altitudinal Range** 0-5 m asl  
**Bioclimatic Zone** Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Terrestrial	Pohuehue- <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> vineland.	Duneland
Terrestrial	Cape ivy vineland.	Duneland
Terrestrial	Lupin/spinifex shrubland.	Duneland
Terrestrial	Bracken-pohuehue fernland.	Duneland
Terrestrial	Spinifex-pingao/ <i>Calystegia soldanella</i> grassland.	Duneland
Terrestrial	Marram grassland.	Duneland
Terrestrial	Buffalo grass-pohuehue grassland.	Duneland
Terrestrial	Kikuyu grassland.	Duneland
Terrestrial	Pingao sedgeland.	Duneland
Terrestrial	<i>Carex testacea</i> -pohuehue- <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> sedgeland.	Duneland
Terrestrial	Canna lily herbfield.	Duneland
Terrestrial	( <i>Ficinia nodosa</i> )-(pohutukawa)-( <i>Coprosma acerosa</i> x <i>C. repens</i> ) rockland. (Beadel 1995b, Wildland Consultants 2005e, 2008a)	Duneland

### Vegetation and Indigenous Flora

This site contains a thin strip of dune vegetation comprising incipient and part of the established foredunes. Some small areas of unmodified transgressive dunefield are present. Pingao (At Risk-Relict in de Lange *et al.* 2009) and sand tussock (classed as At Risk-Declining in de Lange *et al.* 2009) have been recorded in this site (Wildland Consultants 2005j). Native celery (*Apium prostratum* - not threatened but uncommon in Tauranga Ecological District) occurs on a rock off the Shark Alley sand dunes. There are also small natural populations of akeake, houpara, and karo, which are now all locally uncommon on sand dunes in the Bay of Plenty. *Oxalis rubens* (a regionally uncommon plant species, as per Beadel 2006b) is also present on dunes.

Coastal mahoe (*Melicytus novae-zelandiae*) is present in the dunes locally and is spreading slowly. It is not known whether these populations have derived from plantings or from natural occurrence. This species occurs at a small number of inshore sites (Matakana Island, Moturiki, Thornton) in coastal Bay of Plenty.

*Coprosma acerosa* x *C. repens* occurs on the rocks near Shark Alley sand dunes. This is one of only two known naturally occurring populations for this hybrid in the Bay of Plenty (Beadel 1995b).

### Fauna

Northern NZ dotterel and banded dotterel (both classed as Threatened-Nationally Vulnerable in de Lange *et al.* 2009) are present. White-fronted tern (classed as At Risk-Declining in de Lange *et al.* 2009) present in large numbers. The beach is at times used as a roosting area for a range of migrant species (OSNZ 2006).

Black katipo spider (Chronically Threatened, Serious Decline) is present

(B. Christensen pers. comm.).

The land snail *Succinea archeyi* (Chronically Threatened, Serious Decline) may still be present in the dunes, although surveys in the early 2000s failed to find it (K. Owen pers. comm.). Native butterflies and lizards are likely to be inhabiting dunes.

The fauna described for this site does not constitute an exhaustive account. A wide variety of indigenous invertebrates will be present in microsites with indigenous habitats, including, but not limited to, Crustaceans, Myriopods, Arachnids, and Hexapods including Diplurans, Proturans, Collembolids, and Insecta. Of indigenous vertebrates, only shore skink is likely to occur.

**Condition/Pressures**

Garden escapes and weed species are widespread on dunes within this site, and include cape ivy, *Acacia sophorae*, *Aeonium haworthii*, pig's ear, *Ipomaea indica*, *Sedum praealtum*, montbretia, lupin, ice plant, Italian buckthorn, *Agapanthus praecox*, *Asparagus aethiopicus*, climbing dock, dimorphotheca, *Watsonia bulbilifera*, *Crassula ovata*, *Crassula sarmentosa*, smilax, *Arctotis*, tradescantia, and nasturtium. Many of these weeds are currently associated with dumped organic waste or, given their present distribution, have originated from this source.

Buffalo grass, couch, and kikuyu are invading dune vegetation from lawns in residential backyards, around carparks, roadends, and roadsides where these are adjacent dunes. Vehicles are causing damage to the site, particularly at Papamoa East.

Detailed weed distribution maps were produced for this site in summer 2002, and formed the basis for a Tauranga City Council 10 year environmental weed management plan (Wildland Consultants 2002b).

**Tauranga City  
Council Category**

2

<b>Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)</b>		
<b>Significance Assessment</b>		
<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	M
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	H
	3.3	M
	3.4	H
	3.5	M
	3.6	H
Diversity and Pattern	3.7	M
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	H
	3.10	M
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	H
	3.12	M
	3.13	H
* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.		
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		

<b>Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level</b>	
Regional	
<b>Significance Justification</b>	<p>A narrow, discontinuous site containing examples of indigenous sand dune vegetation, albeit extensively modified by heavy human use and adjacent residential activity that links Mauao with dune systems further east. A range of NZ and migratory wader species, several of which are acutely or chronically threatened, are occasionally recorded here. Potentially key habitat for coastal mahoe within ecological district. Ongoing and incipient weed invasion degrading dune vegetation in some areas. Two At Risk plant species have been recorded at this site.</p> <p>Two Threatened and one At Risk bird species have been recorded at this site, as well as the Chronically Threatened black katipo spider.</p> <p><i>Succinea archeyi</i> (land snail) may still be present. A detailed survey is required to determine this.</p>

**Notes** Shark Alley beach has the largest ongoing sand renourishment programme in New Zealand. It is intended to counteract loss of sand due to sand removal from Tauranga Harbour (Greg Jenks pers. comm. 2006). Survey area of dunes for native lizards and butterflies.

This site is ranked as a Category 3<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of regional significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

**References** Beadel 1995b; Wildland Consultants 2002b, 2005e, 2008a; OSNZ 2006.

---

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## KAITUNA RIVER WETLANDS (SES 36) AND KAITUNA RIVER MOUTH (SES 39)

<b>SES Numbers</b>	36 & 39
<b>Grid Reference (NZMG)</b>	E2809979 N6377826
<b>Status</b>	Protected (WBOPDC reserve) and unprotected parts
<b>Site Area</b>	30.3, 1.0; for a total of 31.3 ha
<b>Altitudinal Range</b>	<20 m asl
<b>Bioclimatic Zone</b>	Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Palustrine	Grey willow forest	Wetland
Paulustrine	Grey willow/raupo treeland	Wetland
Terrestrial	Gorse-blackberry scrub	Wetland
Palustrine/terrestrial	Harakeke- <i>Coprosma propinqua</i> subsp. <i>propinqua</i> /raupo- <i>Baumea articulata</i> flax-reedland	Wetland
Paulstrine	Ti kouka/ <i>Juncus edgariae</i> /pasture rushland	Wetland
Paulstrine	Raupo- <i>Baumea articulata</i> reedland	Wetland
Paulstrine	Raupo reedland	Wetland
Paulstrine	Open water	Wetland
Terrestrial	Spinifex sandfield	Beach sands
Terrestrial	Maritime pine/boxthorn-radiata pine/pohuehue treeland	Established foredune

(Wildland Consultants 2007b, 2008a)

### Vegetation and Indigenous Flora

This site comprises wetlands along the true left of the Kaituna River. It includes tidal and non-tidal, riverine and palustrine wetlands dominated by variable mixtures of raupo, harakeke, and *Baumea articulata* with other species such as *Schoenoplectus tabernaemontani*, *Bolboschoenus fluviatilis*, reed sweetgrass, and grey willow. At the river mouth there is an area of beach sand and a hillslope of maritime pine treeland which provides a roosting site for birds. Thirty-seven indigenous plant species were recorded in 2005 and none were rare or threatened (Wildland Consultants 2005g).

### Fauna

Northern New Zealand dotterel and banded dotterel (both classed as Threatened-Nationally Vulnerable in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) and variable oystercatcher (classed as At Risk-Recovering in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) have bred there in the past and are present, and white-fronted tern (classed as At Risk-Declining in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) have been recorded in large numbers roosting at the river mouth. The site is a roosting area for a range of migrant species (OSNZ 2006). The treeland on the west side of the mouth of the Kaituna River is a roosting/breeding site for black shag (classed as At Risk-Naturally Uncommon in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) and pied shag (classed as Threatened-Nationally Vulnerable in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) (K. Owen, pers. comm.).

Spawning of inanga (*Galaxias maculatus*, not threatened), a culturally and commercially important species, was recorded in 1988, mainly among tidally-inundated tall fescue, Mercer grass and *Juncus edgariae* (Mitchell 1990).

**Condition/Pressures** Parts of the site are grazed. Threats to the inanga spawning areas including stock grazing during dry autumns, dying willows collapsing onto sites, and a paper road running through the spawning area (Mitchell 1990). Invasive weeds include grey willow, pampas, crack willow, and reed sweetgrass. (Wildland Consultants 2008a.)

**Tauranga City** SES 36: 2  
**Council Category** SES 39: 2

<b>Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)</b>		
<b>Significance Assessment</b>		
<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	M
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	H
	3.3	M
	3.4	M
	3.5	M
	3.6	M
	Diversity and Pattern	3.7
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	M
	3.10	M
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	M
	3.12	L
	3.13	M
* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.		
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		
<b>Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level</b>		
Regional		
<b>Significance Justification</b>	This site comprises small examples of wetland types which would once have extended along the margins of the Kaituna River and into the Kawa Swamp, a once large wetland which covered much of the Maketu Plains (Kirk 1873). Some of the vegetation types present here are not well-represented at other sites in the Tauranga Ecological District (Beadel 1994a). Three Threatened and three At Risk bird species have been recorded at the site.	

**Notes** This site was ranked as a Category 2<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report, and was identified as a Category 1 natural heritage site in the Tauranga Ecological District (Beadel and Shaw 2000). This site was identified as a site of regional significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

The Kaituna Wetland (a DOC-administered Reserve) is present on the south side of the river. The site forms part of the Smartgrowth 'Kaituna' corridor, ranked as Second-priority Level 1 (Wildland Consultants 2007c and 2007d).

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

**References**

Mitchell 1990; Beadel and Shaw 2000; Wildland Consultants 2005e, 2005g, 2007b, 2008a; OSNZ 2006.

## ELIZABETH WETLAND

**SES Number** 37  
**Grid Reference (NZMG)** E2807512, N6379235  
**Status** Unprotected  
**Site Area** 3.2 ha  
**Altitudinal Range** 0-2 m  
**Bioclimatic Zone** Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation Type	Landform
Palustrine	<i>Juncus effusus</i> /pasture grassland.	Wetland
Palustrine	<i>Baumea articulata</i> reedland.	Wetland
Palustrine	<i>Eleocharis sphacelata</i> reedland. (Wildland Consultants 2007a)	Wetland

**Vegetation and Indigenous Flora** The site is a small lake in a dune hollow which is dominated by *Eleocharis sphacelata* and stands of *Baumea articulata*. It is surrounded by grazed pasture.

**Fauna** Australasian bittern (classed as Threatened-Nationally Vulnerable in Miskelly *et al.* 2008) has been recorded at the site (2006 record C. Staite, DOC, pers. comm.). A pair of bittern regularly breed at this site (landowner pers. comm. to C. Staite, DOC).

**Condition/Pressures** The site is not fenced and the margins are grazed by domestic stock. However, they are unlikely to penetrate into the site because of the depth of the water. There is a small infestation of pampas.

**Tauranga City Council Category** 1

<b>Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)</b>		
<b>Significance Assessment</b>		
<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	M
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	H
	3.3	M
	3.4	L
	3.5	M
	3.6	H
	Diversity and Pattern	3.7
Naturalness	3.8	M
Ecological Context	3.9	M
	3.10	M
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	M
	3.12	H
	3.13	M
* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.		
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		
<b>Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level</b>		
Regional		
<b>Significance Justification</b>	This site is a good example of a dune lake in Tauranga Ecological District and is habitat for a Nationally Vulnerable species (Australasian bittern). Apart from the lakes on Matakana Island, no other dune lakes remain in Tauranga Ecological District.	

**Notes** This site was ranked as a Category 2<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of regional significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

The site would benefit from fencing and planting of a buffer of suitable, locally sourced, indigenous species (for example manuka).

**References** Wildland Consultants 2007a, 2008a.

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## BELL ROAD OXBOW

**SES Number** 38  
**Grid Reference (NZMG)** E2805978 N6379006  
**Status** Protected (WBOPDC local purpose reserve)  
**Site Area** 3.1 ha  
**Altitudinal Range** 0 m asl  
**Bioclimatic Zone** Coastal

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Lacustrine	Open fresh water. (Wildland Consultants 2006g)	Open water

**Vegetation and Indigenous Flora** This oxbow lake is divided by roads into three parts. Crack willow-gorse shrubland occurs along the margins of the southern area, whilst crack willow-grey willow-pampas shrubland and sandfield occurs around the northern area. There is local raupo and harakeke. A small stand of raupo is present at the south-east end of this oxbow. Elsewhere open water is fringed by creeping bent (*Agrostis stolonifera*) (Wildland Consultants 2000e).

**Fauna** Mallard, white-faced heron, pukeko, and shag species use this lake (Wildland Consultants 2000e).

**Condition/Pressures** One side of this site appears to be fenced and is bounded by a narrow marginal strip of scrub or rank grassland.

**Tauranga City Council Category** 2

**Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)**

**Significance Assessment**

<b>Criterion*</b>	<b>RPS Number*</b>	<b>Ranking**</b>
Representativeness	3.1	L
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	M
	3.3	L
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	M
	Diversity and Pattern	3.7
Naturalness	3.8	L
Ecological Context	3.9	L
	3.10	L
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	L
	3.12	L
	3.13	L

\* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.

\*\* H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.

**Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level**

Local

**Significance Justification** This site is of local significance because very few oxbow lakes remain in the Tauranga ED, and the site has potential to be restored. The vegetation at this site is highly degraded however, and better quality examples of oxbow lakes are present within the Kaituna River Wetland. This site is habitat for shags and common waterfowl.

**Notes** This site is ranked as a Category 4<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of local significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

**References** Wildland Consultants 2000e, 2008a.

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## MOTUOPUHI ISLAND

**SES Number** 40  
**Grid Reference (NZMG)** E2789585, N6383018  
**Status** Protected (TCC reserve) and unprotected parts  
**Site Area** 1.2 ha  
**Altitudinal Range** 0 m asl

Hydrosystem	Vegetation/Habitat Type	Landform
Terrestrial	Robinia-brush wattle-(pohutukawa)-(karaka)- ( <i>Eucalyptus</i> sp.) treeland.	Harbour Island
Terrestrial	Wattle forest and scrub.	Harbour Island
Estuarine	(Pampas)/(marsh ribbonwood)-sea rush-oioi- <i>Baumea juncea</i> tussockland (with local mangrove in channels).  (P. Cashmore pers. comm.)	Harbour Island

**Indigenous Flora** Seven plants of *Tetragonia tetragonioides* (classed as At Risk-Naturally Uncommon) were noted (P. Cashmore pers. comm.).

**Indigenous Fauna** Tui and New Zealand kingfisher were noted in 2008. Wader roosting site for pied oystercatcher, variable oystercatcher (classed as At Risk-Recovering in Miskelly *et al.* 2008), pied stilt (classed as At Risk-Declining in Miskelly *et al.* 2008), and other species. (P. Cashmore pers. comm.).

**Condition/Pressures** A large range of weed species are present including pampas, brush wattle, black wattle, boneseed, coastal banksia, Japanese spindletree, Japanese honeysuckle, Chinese privet, wild ginger, arum lily, moth plant, bamboo, montbretia, smilax, false acacia, cape ivy, kikuyu, and tradescantia. There are a range of both exotic and native plantings on the island. Some of the native plantings include species which do not occur naturally in Tauranga ED, for example pukuanui (*Meryta sinclairii*) (P. Cashmore pers. comm.).

**Tauranga City Council Category** 2

## Significance Assessment

Significance Assessment and Justification (based on the Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria; sourced from Wildland Consultants 2008a)		
Significance Assessment		
Criterion*	RPS Number*	Ranking**
Representativeness	3.1	L
Rarity or Distinctive Features	3.2	L
	3.3	L
	3.4	L
	3.5	L
	3.6	M
Diversity and Pattern	3.7	L
Naturalness	3.8	L
Ecological Context	3.9	L
	3.10	L
Viability and Sustainability	3.11	L
	3.12	L
	3.13	L
* Bay of Plenty Regional Policy Statement Heritage Criteria: Appendix F, Set 3. Refer to A3 fold-out page in Appendix 14 of this document for descriptions of criteria and definitions of High, Medium, and Low rankings.		
** H = High, M = Medium, L = Low.		
Bay of Plenty Relative Significance Level		
Local		
<b>Significance Justification</b>	Small harbour island in an inner harbour setting bearing degraded, exotic dominated vegetation. One At Risk plant species is present. Habitat for two At Risk bird species.	

### Notes

This site was ranked as a Category 4<sup>1</sup> site in the Tauranga Ecological District Natural Area Report. This site was identified as a site of local significance in a study of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in the coastal environment of the Bay of Plenty Region (Wildland Consultants 2006).

Due to the proximity to the mainland and easy accessibility at low tide, this island would be relatively frequently visited by the public, dogs, and pest animals (P. Cashmore pers. comm.).

This site is otherwise known as Rat Island.

### References

Wildland Consultants 2008a.

<sup>1</sup> Sites were ranked as Category 1-4 in the Tauranga Ecological District report, however the criteria in that study for assigning categories (reproduced in Appendix 13 of this report) are different from the Tauranga City ecological categories (1 and 2).

## DEFINITIONS OF CATEGORY 1-4 ASSESSED IN THE TAURANGA ECOLOGICAL DISTRICT NATURAL AREAS STUDY

(Wildland Consultants 2008a)

Sites ranked as Categories 1-4 can be considered to be significant in terms of Section 6(c) of the Resource Management Act (1991). The four categories are defined as follows:

### *Category 1*

Category 1 areas are representative examples of indigenous vegetation or wildlife habitats on particular landform units within the relevant bioclimatic zone in each ecological district. They contain some of the largest, best quality, or only remaining examples of indigenous vegetation or wildlife habitat in an ecological district.

### *Category 2<sup>1</sup>*

Category 2 sites are also good quality representative examples of vegetation and/or wildlife habitat (c.f. Category 1), which complement Category 1 sites and existing protected natural areas. They may include:

- relatively small areas with vegetation types or plant taxa under-represented or unrepresented in protected natural areas or Category 1 areas;
- relatively large areas with features which are represented in existing protected areas or Category 1 areas, but which are nevertheless worthy of protection;
- sites containing vegetation types that were formerly more common in the ecological district and are unrepresented in protected natural areas or Category 1 sites, but which have been degraded by weed invasion or animal damage, or similar.

### *Category 3<sup>1</sup>*

Category 3 includes sites that are:

- often smaller than Category 1 or 2 sites with interesting or special features, even though the ecological unit(s) is usually of lower quality;
- relatively large areas that are highly modified.

### *Category 4*

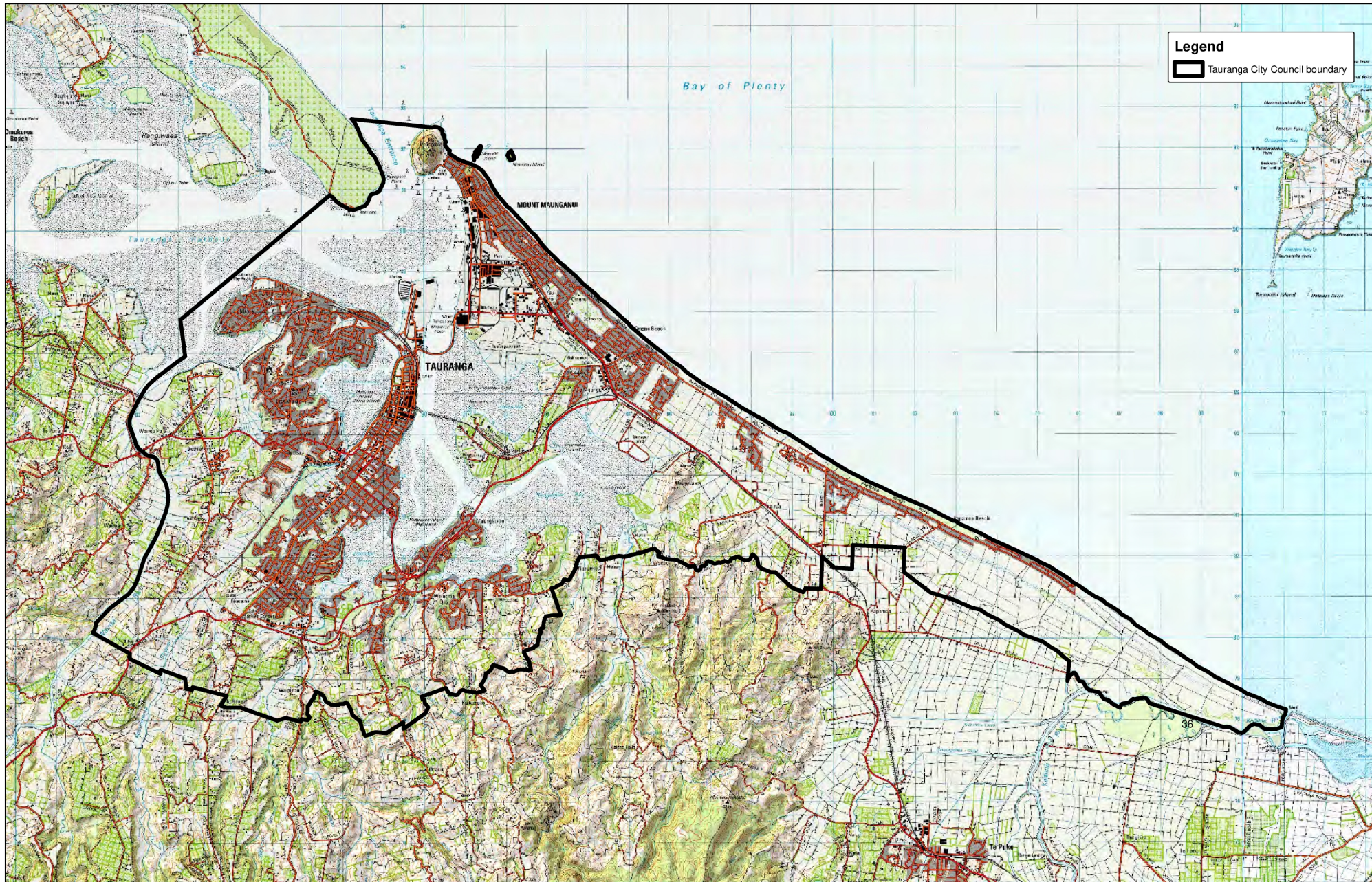
Category 4 sites are often smaller and may be considerably more modified than features represented in the previous category. They are nevertheless significant as they contain features worthy of protection.

---

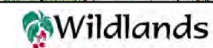
<sup>1</sup> Category 2 and 3 sites are often smaller areas with interesting and unique features, but the condition of representative ecological units is usually not as good.

BAY OF PLENTY REGIONAL POLICY  
STATEMENT HERITAGE CRITERIA  
(INDIGENOUS VEGETATION AND HABITATS OF  
INDIGENOUS FAUNA)

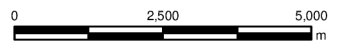
<b>BAY OF PLENTY REGIONAL POLICY STATEMENT – HERITAGE CRITERIA: APPENDIX F, SET 3 and GUIDELINES – Natural area is 'significant' if it meets one or more the criteria (i.e. at least one 'H' or several 'M' for any of these).</b>	
<b>Representativeness</b>	
3.1	"Indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna that contains associations of indigenous species representative, typical, or characteristic of the natural diversity of the region or any relevant ecological districts." H Best OR relatively large OR good quality example of vegetation/habitat in the ecological district; OR only example of a type which was formerly more extensive. H Similar to other areas that occur elsewhere in relevant ecological district. L Degraded, small; better quality examples exist elsewhere in ecological district.
<b>Rarity or Distinctive Features</b>	
3.2	"Indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna supports an indigenous species or associations of species threatened, or rare nationally, regionally, or within the relevant ecological district." H Nationally acutely or chronically threatened species present (includes Nationally Critical, Nationally Endangered, Nationally Vulnerable, Serious Decline, Gradual Decline; see Molloy <i>et al.</i> 2002); OR several nationally at risk species present. M Nationally at risk or data deficient species present (includes Range Restricted, Sparse, Data Deficient) OR species considered rare or threatened in the region or ecological district. L No rare or threatened species known to be present.
3.3	"Indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna can contribute to the maintenance or recovery of a species threatened, or rare nationally, regionally, or within the relevant ecological district." H Potentially key habitat for a threatened species OR likely to already be habitat for a threatened species, though not recorded (e.g. because same species has been recorded from very nearby in similar habitat, to which this area is complementary). M Potentially habitat that can contribute to maintaining or recovering a threatened species. L Not potential habitat for a threatened species.
3.4	"Indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna is distinctive, of restricted occurrence, or at the limits of its natural distribution range, or has developed as a result of factors such as natural geothermal activity, historical cultural practices, altitude, water table, or soil type." H Nationally distinctive (e.g. nationally rare vegetation or habitat type; national species distribution limit). M Regionally distinctive (e.g. unusual vegetation or habitat type within region; only or one of few populations of species within region) L Typical vegetation or habitat type.
3.5	"Indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna that is one of the largest remaining examples of its type within the region or any relevant ecological district." H Yes – one of largest examples of type in region (e.g. 1 of 3). M Yes – one of largest examples of type in ecological district (but also represented in other ecological districts). L Moderate or small size example of type.
3.6	"Indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna is significantly reduced in area and is degraded but retains key natural ecosystem functions (for example hydrology) and has a high potential for restoration." H High restoration potential (e.g. reasonably large but moderately degraded example, however retains key ecosystem functions). M Moderate restoration potential (e.g. highly degraded example, however retains key ecosystem functions). L Little potential for restoration without large investment in restoring ecosystem function (e.g. restoring hydrology). N/A Indigenous vegetation or habitats of indigenous fauna not significantly reduced in area, or not degraded, or requiring little or not restoration effort.
<b>Diversity and Pattern</b>	
3.7	"Indigenous vegetation or habitats of indigenous fauna which contains a high diversity of indigenous ecosystem or habitat types or changes in species composition, reflecting the existence of diverse natural features (for example landforms, soil types or hydrology), or communities along an ecological gradient." H More than two landforms or bioclimatic zones; or more than 7 mainly indigenous vegetation/habitat classes. M More than one landform or bioclimatic zone; or 4-7 mainly indigenous vegetation/habitat classes. L Only one landform and bioclimatic zone; or 1-3 mainly indigenous vegetation/habitat classes.
<b>Naturalness</b>	
3.8	"Indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna is in a natural state or healthy condition, or is in an original condition." H Low-level or nil human-related disturbance (e.g. weeds, pests, logging, fire, dumping, development) – includes secondary vegetation established following natural disturbance. M Moderate level of human-related disturbance, for example relatively good quality secondary vegetation developed following human disturbance, low levels of selective logging 20 or more years earlier. L Exotic/induced/heavily disturbed.
<b>Ecological Context</b>	
3.9	"Indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna contributes to the ecological viability of adjoining natural areas and biological communities, by providing or contributing to an important ecological linkage or network, or providing a buffer from adjacent land uses." H Provides an ecological linkage/corridor function or buffer to an adjoining natural area of high overall ecological significance OR one of only a few examples of existing or potential key ecological linkages within the ecological district (e.g. only stream with riparian vegetation which reaches harbour). M Provides an ecological linkage/corridor function or buffer to an adjoining natural area of moderate or low overall ecological significance; OR an example of an ecological linkage or buffer which is not common within the ecological district. L An isolated natural area, without linkage or buffer functions OR an example of a linkage or buffer that is common.
3.10	"Indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna provides habitat for indigenous species at key stages of their life cycle." H Yes – critical to the self-sustainability of an indigenous species (e.g. feeding, breeding or roosting site, such as for indigenous fish species or migratory birds (national and international). M Yes – provides habitat for indigenous species at key stages of their life cycle. L Not known to provide habitat for indigenous species at key stages in their life cycle.
<b>Viability and Sustainability</b>	
3.11	"Indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna is of sufficient size and compact shape and has the capacity to maintain its ecological viability over time." H Large size (relative to similar vegetation/habitat in region) OR primarily compact, no major constrictions. M Moderate size (relative to similar vegetation/habitat in region) OR irregular or convoluted. L Small size (relative to similar vegetation/habitat in region) OR highly convoluted or discontinuous.
3.12	"Indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna supports intact habitats and healthy functioning ecosystems." H Intact and healthy; able to remain ecological viable with low or minimal management effort. M Contains elements of a functioning ecosystem, but requires management intervention to be ecologically viable in long term. L Degraded; requires considerable management effort to render ecologically viable.
3.13	"Indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna is of sufficient size and compact shape to resist changes initiated by external agents." (Same as 3.11, but relatively larger) H Large size (relative to similar vegetation/habitat in region) OR primarily compact, no major constrictions. M Moderate size (relative to similar vegetation/habitat in region) OR irregular or convoluted. L Small size (relative to similar vegetation/habitat in region) OR highly convoluted or discontinuous.



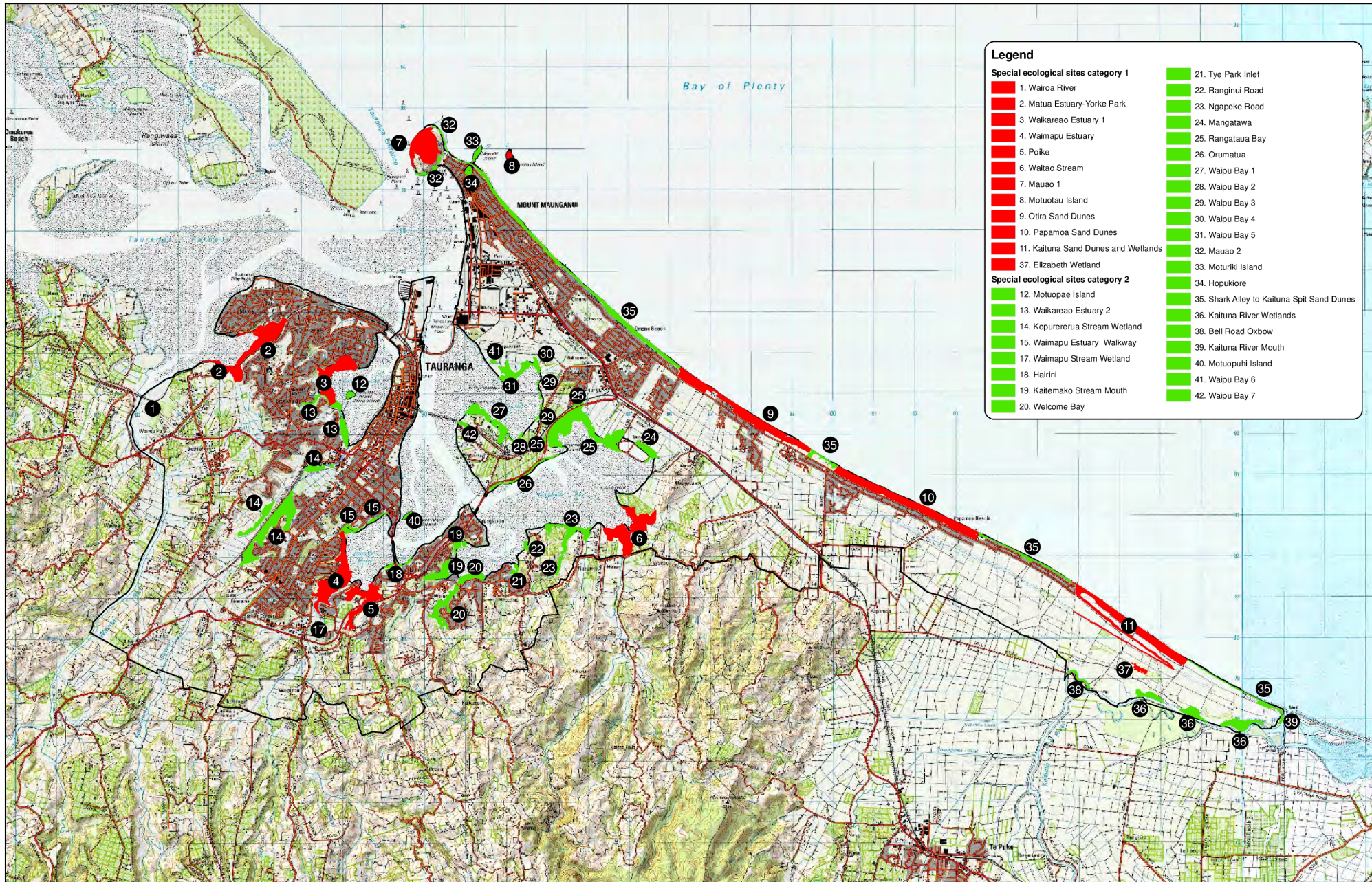
Map 1: Tauranga City Council (TCC) Boundary



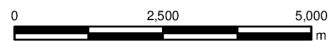
Scale: 1:90,000  
 Date: 10/09/2009  
 Cartographer: [Redacted]  
 Format: A3



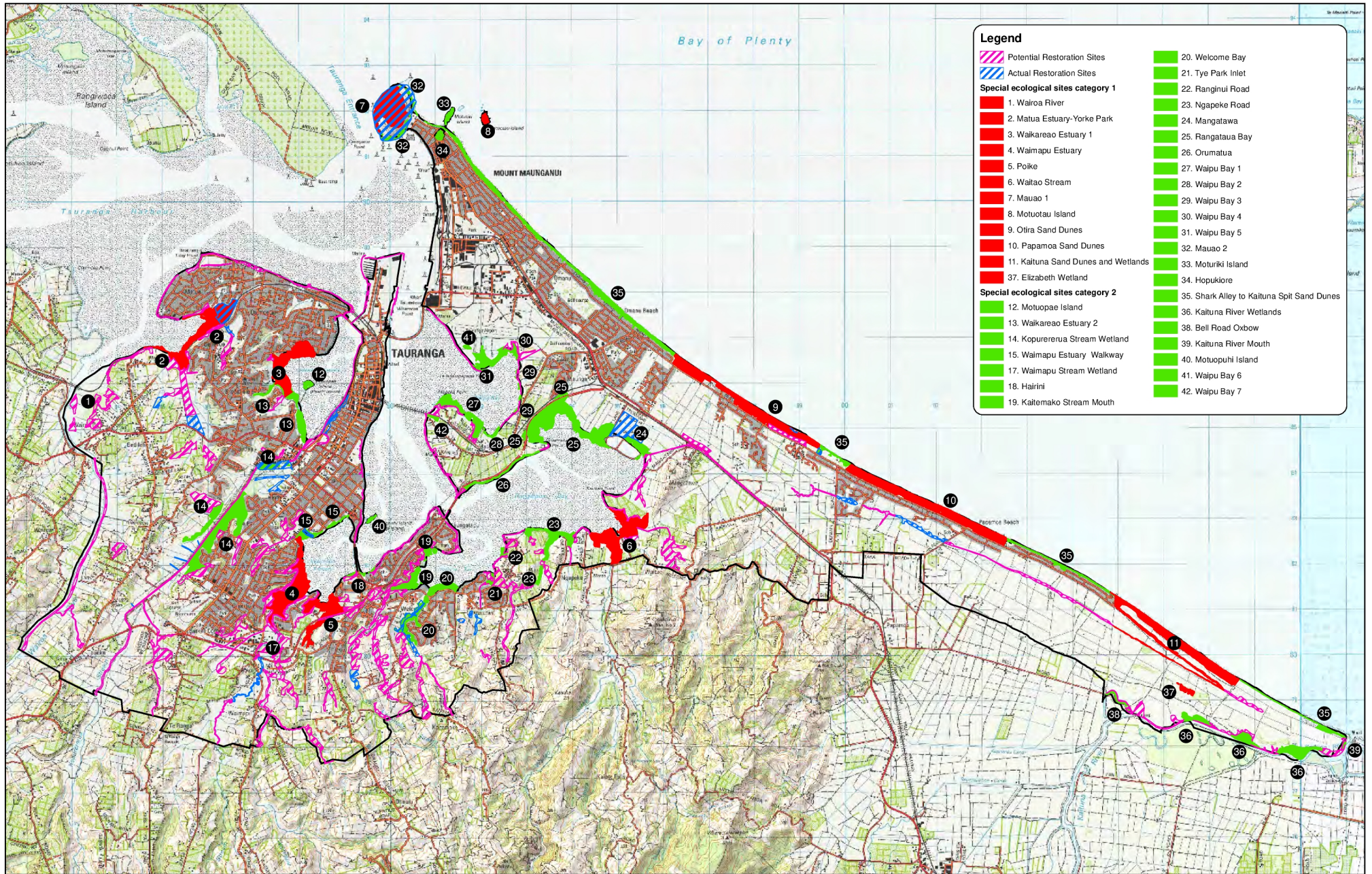
E:\gis\Tauranga\_2005\2009.mxd\2009\Final\Figures\Map 1 Tauranga City Council (TCC) Boundary.mxd



Map 2: Special Ecological Sites in Tauranga City



Scale: 1:90,000  
 Date: 10/09/2009  
 Cartographer:  
 Format: A3



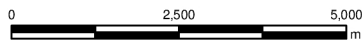
**Legend**

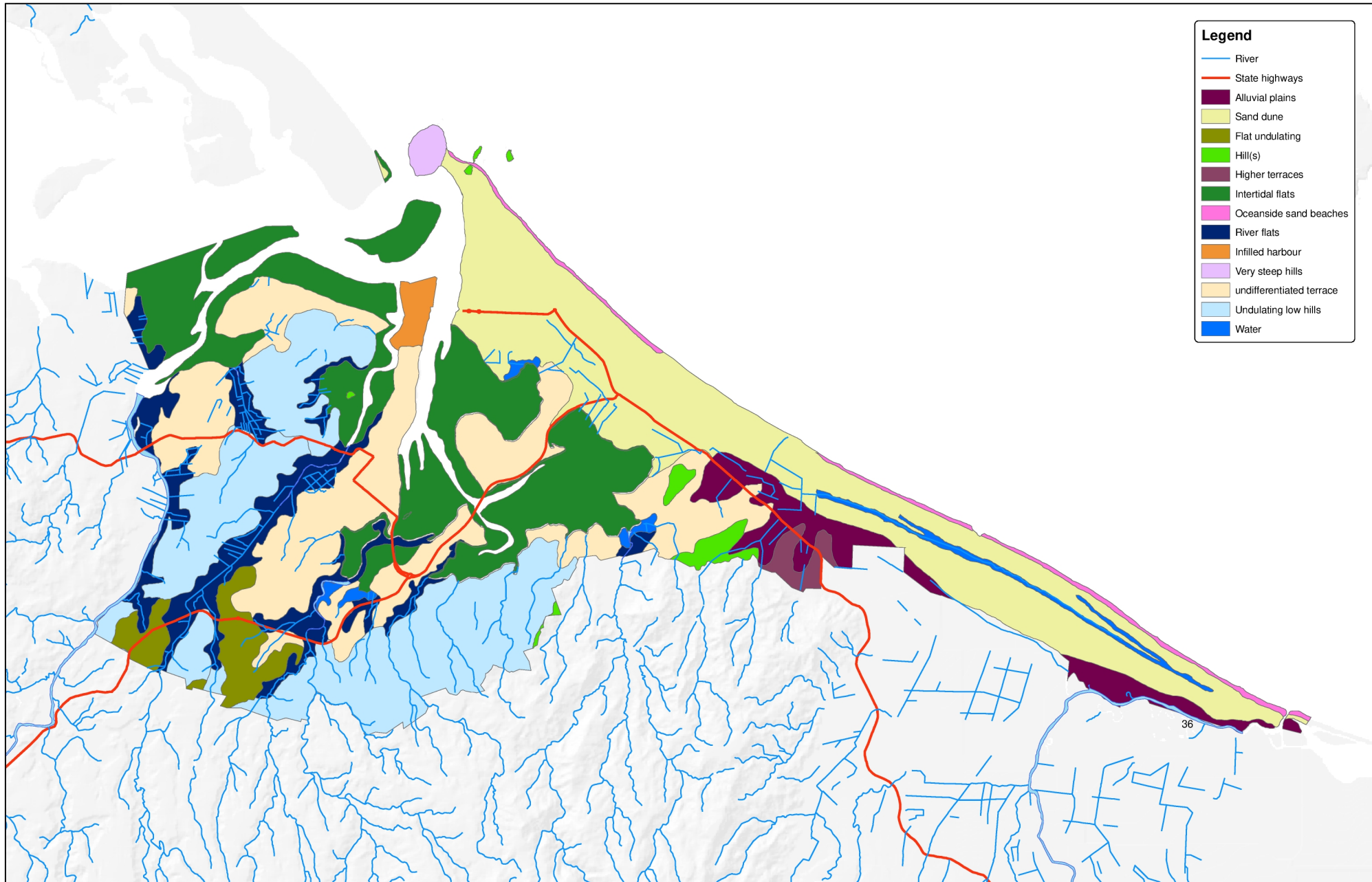
- Potential Restoration Sites
- Actual Restoration Sites
- Special ecological sites category 1**
- 1. Wairoa River
- 2. Matua Estuary-Yorke Park
- 3. Waikareao Estuary 1
- 4. Waimapu Estuary
- 5. Poike
- 6. Waitao Stream
- 7. Mauao 1
- 8. Motuotau Island
- 9. Oira Sand Dunes
- 10. Papamoa Sand Dunes
- 11. Kaituna Sand Dunes and Wetlands
- 37. Elizabeth Wetland
- Special ecological sites category 2**
- 12. Motuopae Island
- 13. Waikareao Estuary 2
- 14. Kopurererua Stream Wetland
- 15. Waimapu Estuary Walkway
- 17. Waimapu Stream Wetland
- 18. Hairini
- 19. Kaitemako Stream Mouth
- 20. Welcome Bay
- 21. Tye Park Inlet
- 22. Ranginui Road
- 23. Ngapeke Road
- 24. Mangatawa
- 25. Rangataua Bay
- 26. Orumatua
- 27. Waipu Bay 1
- 28. Waipu Bay 2
- 29. Waipu Bay 3
- 30. Waipu Bay 4
- 31. Waipu Bay 5
- 32. Mauao 2
- 33. Moturiki Island
- 34. Hopukiore
- 35. Shark Alley to Kaituna Spit Sand Dunes
- 36. Kaituna River Wetlands
- 38. Bell Road Oxbow
- 39. Kaituna River Mouth
- 40. Motuopuhi Island
- 41. Waipu Bay 6
- 42. Waipu Bay 7

**Map 3: Special Ecological Sites, and Actual and Potential Restoration Sites in Tauranga City**

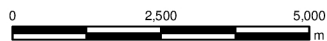


Scale: 1:80,000  
 Date: 10/09/2009  
 Cartographer:  
 Format: A3





**Map 4: Landforms of Tauranga City**

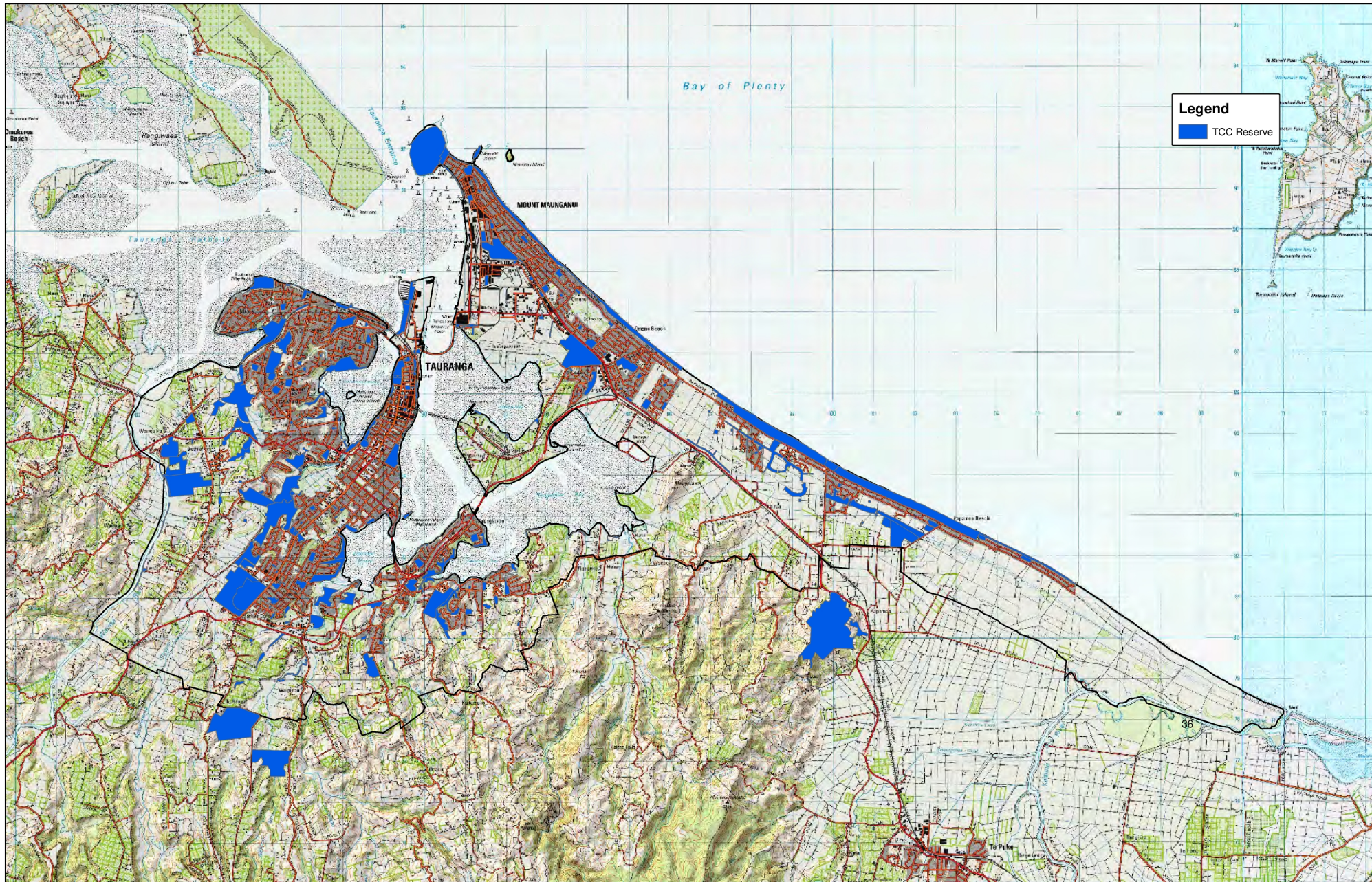


E:\gis\Tauranga\_2009\2009\mxd\2009\Final\Figures\Map 4 Landforms of Tauranga City.mxd

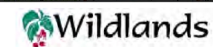


Scale: 1:90,000  
 Date: 10/09/2009  
 Cartographer:  
 Format: A3

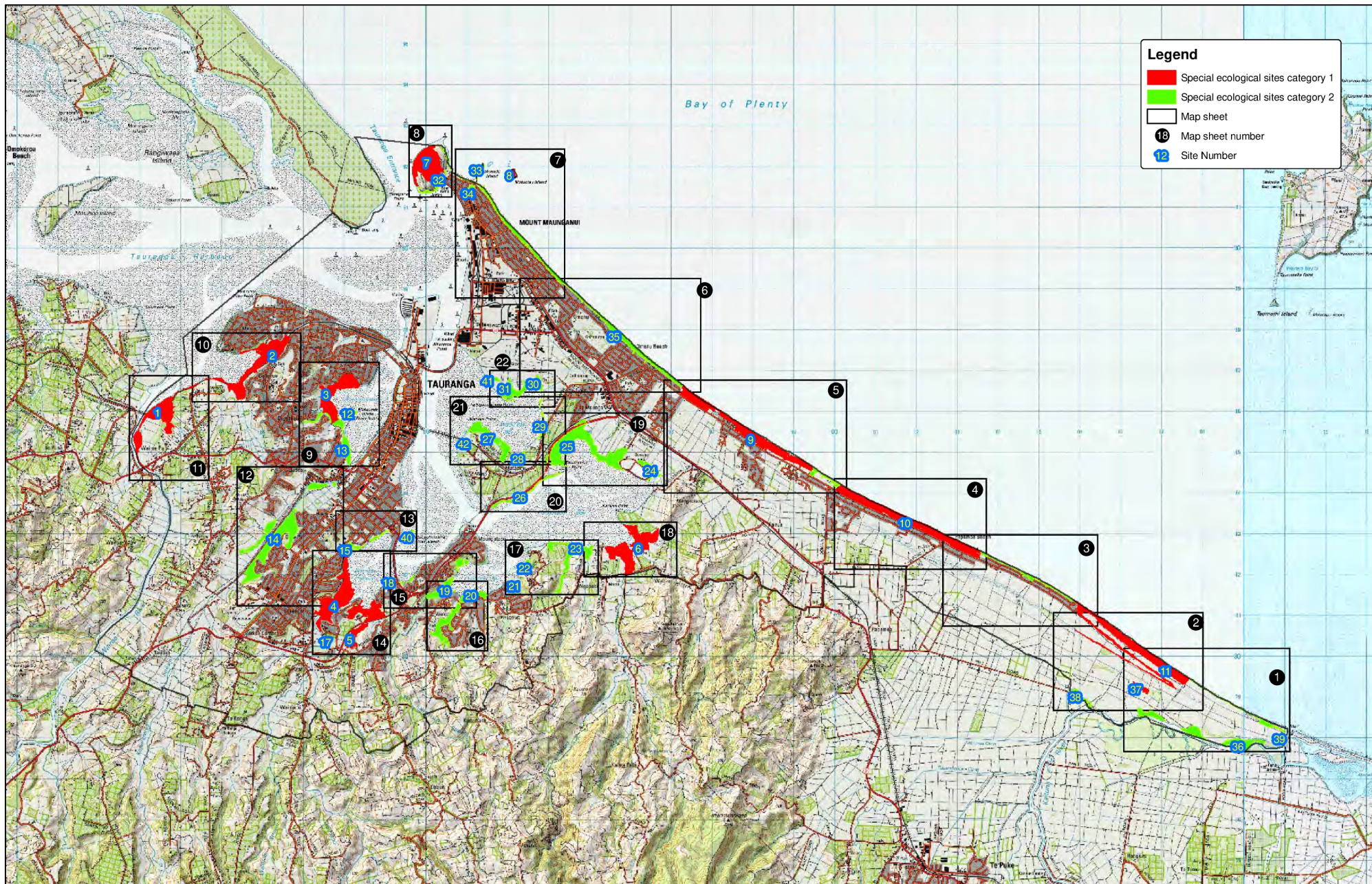




Map 5: Legally Protected Areas in Tauranga City



Scale: 1:90,000  
 Date: 10/09/2009  
 Cartographer: [Name]  
 Format: A3



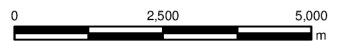
**Legend**

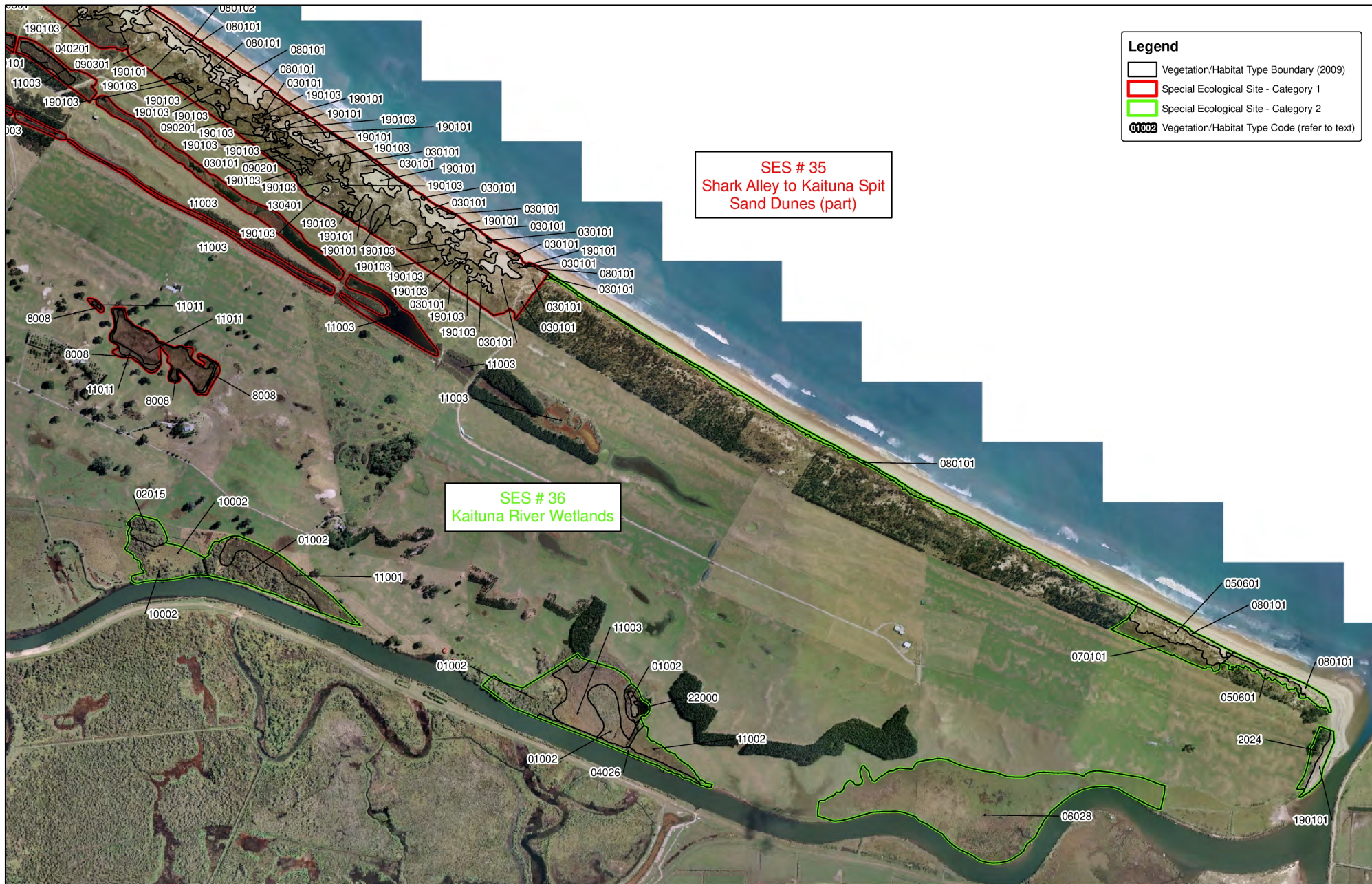
- Special ecological sites category 1
- Special ecological sites category 2
- Map sheet
- 18 Map sheet number
- 12 Site Number

**Map 6: Index Map - Special Ecological Sites (SES) and Vegetation/Habitat Types**







Scale: 1:90,000  
 Date: 10/09/2009  
 Cartographer:  
 Format: A3





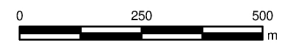
**Legend**

-  Vegetation/Habitat Type Boundary (2009)
-  Special Ecological Site - Category 1
-  Special Ecological Site - Category 2
-  01002 Vegetation/Habitat Type Code (refer to text)

**SES # 35**  
 Shark Alley to Kaituna Spit  
 Sand Dunes (part)

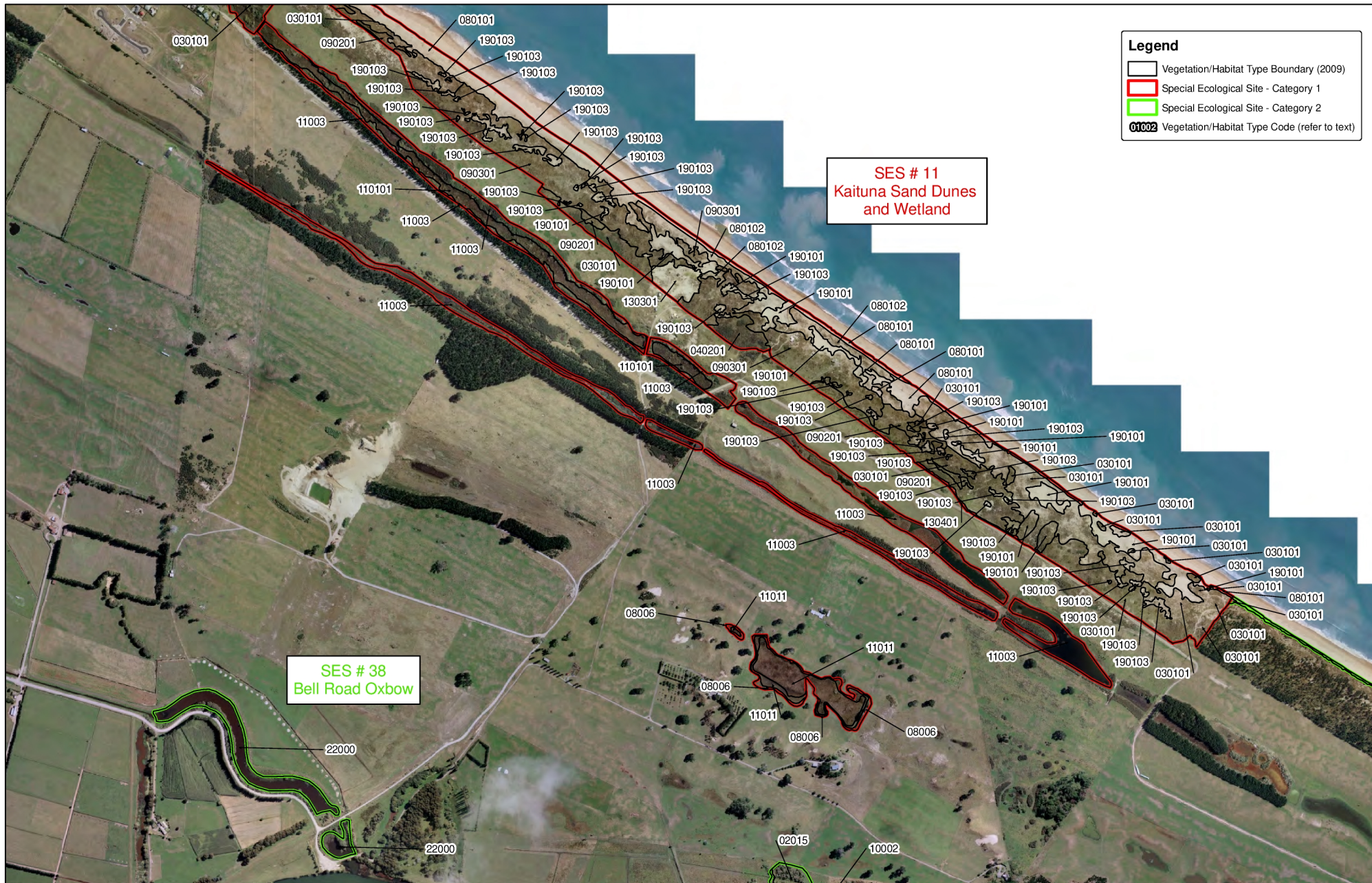
**SES # 36**  
 Kaituna River Wetlands

**Special Ecological Sites (SES) Boundaries and Vegetation/Habitat Types**  
 Sheet 1 of 22



Scale: 1:11,000  
 Date: 10/09/2009  
 Cartographer:  
 Format: A3R

E:\gis\Tauranga\_2009\2009.mxd\2009\Final\Figures\Map 6 sheet 01.mxd



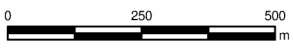
**Legend**

- Vegetation/Habitat Type Boundary (2009)
- Special Ecological Site - Category 1
- Special Ecological Site - Category 2
- 01002** Vegetation/Habitat Type Code (refer to text)

**SES # 11**  
**Kaituna Sand Dunes**  
**and Wetland**

**SES # 38**  
**Bell Road Oxbow**

**Special Ecological Sites (SES) Boundaries and Vegetation/Habitat Types**  
**Sheet 2 of 22**



E:\gis\Tauranga\_2005\2009.mxd\2009\Final\Figures\Map 6 sheet 02.mxd



Scale: 1:10,000  
 Date: 10/09/2009  
 Cartographer: [Redacted]  
 Format: A3R



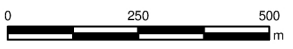


**Legend**

- Vegetation/Habitat Type Boundary (2009)
- Special Ecological Site - Category 1
- Special Ecological Site - Category 2
- 01002** Vegetation/Habitat Type Code (refer to text)

SES # 35  
Shark Alley to Kaituna Spit  
Sand Dunes (part)

**Special Ecological Sites (SES) Boundaries and Vegetation/Habitat Types**  
Sheet 3 of 22



E:\gis\Tauranga\_2009\2009\umxd\2009\Final\Figures\Map 6 sheet 03.mxd



Scale: 1:10,250  
Date: 10/09/2009  
Cartographer:  
Format: A3R







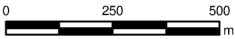
**Legend**

- Vegetation/Habitat Type Boundary (2009)
- Special Ecological Site - Category 1
- Special Ecological Site - Category 2
- 01002** Vegetation/Habitat Type Code (refer to text)

**SES # 35**  
 Shark Alley to Kaituna Spit  
 and Dunes (part)

**SES # 31**  
 Waipu Bay 5

**Special Ecological Sites (SES) Boundaries and Vegetation/Habitat Types**  
 Sheet 6 of 22



E:\gis\Tauranga\_2009\2009\umxd\2009\Final\Figures\Map 6 sheet 06.mxd



Scale: 1:12,500  
 Date: 10/09/2009  
 Cartographer:  
 Format: A3R



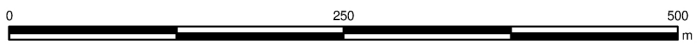


**Legend**

- Vegetation/Habitat Type Boundary (2009)
- Special Ecological Site - Category 1
- Special Ecological Site - Category 2
- 01002** Vegetation/Habitat Type Code (refer to text)

**SES #7  
Mauao 1**

**Special Ecological Sites (SES) Boundaries and Vegetation/Habitat Types**  
Sheet 8 of 22



E:\gis\Tauranga\_2009\2009\umxd\2009\Final\Figures\Map 6 sheet 08.mxd

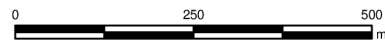


Scale: 1:4,000  
 Date: 10/09/2009  
 Cartographer:  
 Format: A3R

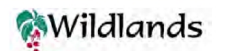




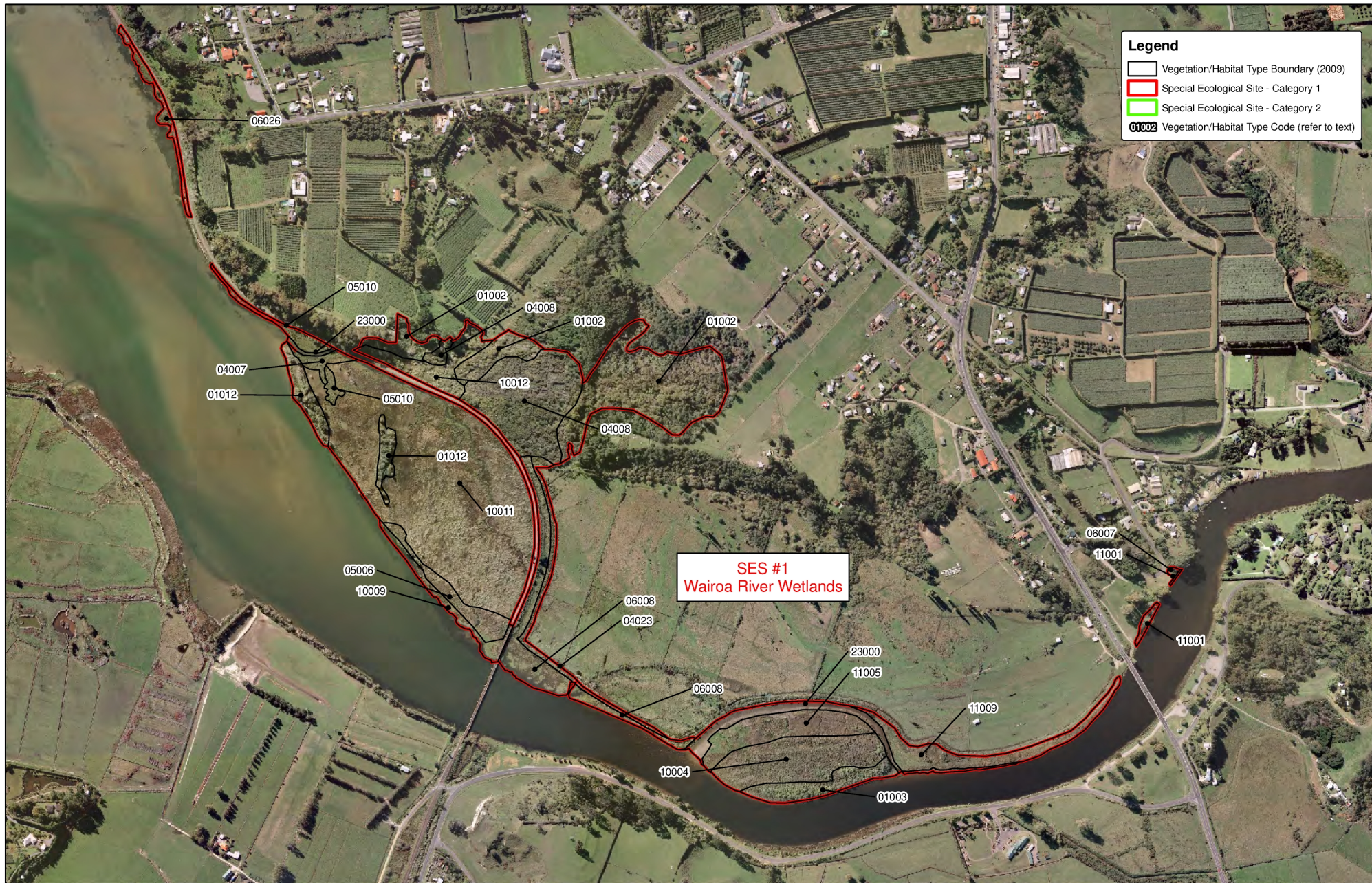
**Special Ecological Sites (SES) Boundaries and Vegetation/Habitat Types**  
Sheet 10 of 22



E:\gis\Tauranga\_2009\2009\umxd\2009\Final\Figures\Map 6 sheet 10.mxd



Scale: 1:7,500  
Date: 10/09/2009  
Cartographer: s 7(2)(a) - Privac  
Format: A3R



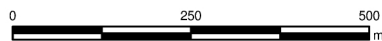
**Legend**

- Vegetation/Habitat Type Boundary (2009)
- Special Ecological Site - Category 1
- Special Ecological Site - Category 2
- 01002** Vegetation/Habitat Type Code (refer to text)

**SES #1**  
**Wairoa River Wetlands**



**Special Ecological Sites (SES) Boundaries and Vegetation/Habitat Types**  
Sheet 11 of 22



E:\gis\Tauranga\_2009\2009\umxd\2009\Final\Figures\Map 6 sheet 11.mxd



Scale: 1:7,500  
Date: 10/09/2009  
Cartographer: [Name]  
Format: A3R

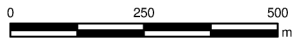


SES #14  
Kopurerua Stream Wetland

- Legend**
- Vegetation/Habitat Type Boundary (2009)
  - Special Ecological Site - Category 1
  - Special Ecological Site - Category 2
  - 01002** Vegetation/Habitat Type Code (refer to text)



**Special Ecological Sites (SES) Boundaries and Vegetation/Habitat Types**  
Sheet 12 of 22



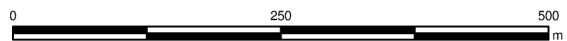
E:\gis\Tauranga\_2009\2009\mxd\2009\FinalFigures\Map 6 sheet 12.mxd



Scale: 1:10,000  
Date: 10/09/2009  
Cartographer: [Name]  
Format: A3R



**Special Ecological Sites (SES) Boundaries and Vegetation/Habitat Types**  
**Sheet 13 of 22**



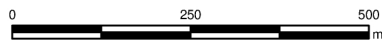
E:\gis\Tauranga\_2009\2009\mxd\2009\Final\Figures\Map 6 sheet 13.mxd



Scale: 1:5,000  
 Date: 10/09/2009  
 Cartographer: [Name]  
 Format: A3R



**Special Ecological Sites (SES) Boundaries and Vegetation/Habitat Types**  
 Sheet 14 of 22



E:\gis\Tauranga\_2009\2009\umxd\2009\FinalFigures\Map 6 sheet 14.mxd



Scale: 1:7,500  
 Date: 10/09/2009  
 Cartographer: s 7(2)(a) - Privac  
 Format: A3R





**Special Ecological Sites (SES) Boundaries and Vegetation/Habitat Types**  
**Sheet 16 of 22**

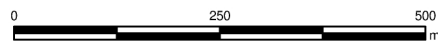


Scale: 1:6,500  
 Date: 10/09/2009  
 Cartographer: [Redacted]  
 Format: A3R

E:\gis\Tauranga\_2009\2009\mxd\2009\FinalFigures\Map 6 sheet 16.mxd



**Special Ecological Sites (SES) Boundaries and Vegetation/Habitat Types**  
**Sheet 17 of 22**



E:\gis\Tauranga\_2009\2009\mxd\2009\Final\Figures\Map 6 sheet 17.mxd

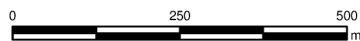


Scale: 1:6,500  
 Date: 10/09/2009  
 Cartographer:  
 Format: A3R





**Special Ecological Sites (SES) Boundaries and Vegetation/Habitat Types**  
**Sheet 19 of 22**



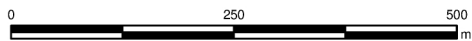
E:\gis\Tauranga\_2009\2009\umxd\2009\Final\Figures\Map 6 sheet 19.mxd



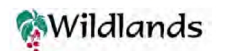
Scale: 1:8,000  
 Date: 10/09/2009  
 Cartographer:  
 Format: A3R



**Special Ecological Sites (SES) Boundaries and Vegetation/Habitat Types**  
 Sheet 20 of 22



E:\gis\Tauranga\_2009\2009\mxd\2009\FinalFigures\Map 6 sheet 20.mxd



Scale: 1:6,000  
 Date: 10/09/2009  
 Cartographer: [Name]  
 Format: A3R

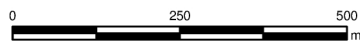


**Legend**

- Vegetation/Habitat Type Boundary (2009)
- Special Ecological Site - Category 1
- Special Ecological Site - Category 2
- 01002** Vegetation/Habitat Type Code (refer to text)

SES #27  
Waipu Bay 1

**Special Ecological Sites (SES) Boundaries and Vegetation/Habitat Types**  
Sheet 21 of 22



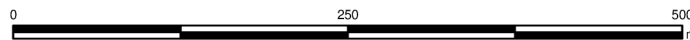
E:\gis\Tauranga\_2009\2009\umxd\2009\Final\Figures\Map 6 sheet 21.mxd



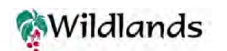
Scale: 1:8,000  
 Date: 10/09/2009  
 Cartographer: 100m  
 Format: A3R



**Special Ecological Sites (SES) Boundaries and Vegetation/Habitat Types**  
 Sheet 22 of 22



E:\gis\Tauranga\_2009\2009\mxd\2009\FinalFigures\Map 6 sheet 22.mxd



Scale: 1:4,000  
 Date: 10/09/2009  
 Cartographer:  
 Format: A3R